

(19) World Intellectual Property Organization  
International Bureau



(43) International Publication Date  
15 September 2005 (15.09.2005)

PCT

(10) International Publication Number  
**WO 2005/085259 A2**

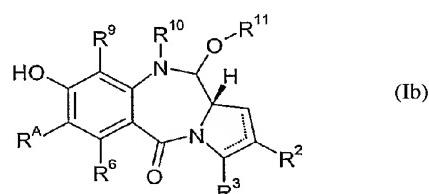
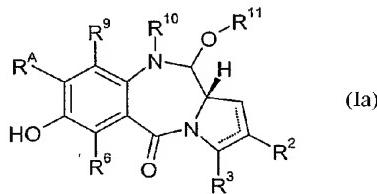
- (51) International Patent Classification<sup>7</sup>: C07D 519/00, 487/04, A61K 31/55, A61P 35/00
- (21) International Application Number: PCT/GB2005/000770
- (22) International Filing Date: 1 March 2005 (01.03.2005)
- (25) Filing Language: English
- (26) Publication Language: English
- (30) Priority Data: 0404577.9 1 March 2004 (01.03.2004) GB
- (71) Applicant (for all designated States except US): SPIROGEN LIMITED [GB/GB]; 79 George Street, Ryde Isle of Wight PO33 2JF (GB).
- (72) Inventors; and
- (75) Inventors/Applicants (for US only): HOWARD, Philip Wilson [GB/GB]; 3 Westbourne Mews, The Maltings, St Albans Hertfordshire AL1 1LS (GB). KANG, Gyoung-Dong [KR/GB]; 59 Bridgewood Road, Worcester Park Surrey KT4 8XR (GB).
- (74) Agents: WATSON, Robert et al.; Mewburn Ellis LLP, York House, 23 Kingsway, London Greater London WC2B 6HP (GB).
- (81) Designated States (unless otherwise indicated, for every kind of national protection available): AE, AG, AL, AM, AT, AU, AZ, BA, BB, BG, BR, BW, BY, BZ, CA, CH, CN, CO, CR, CU, CZ, DE, DK, DM, DZ, EC, EE, EG, ES, FI, GB, GD, GE, GH, GM, HR, HU, ID, IL, IN, IS, JP, KE, KG, KP, KR, KZ, LC, LK, LR, LS, LT, LU, LV, MA, MD, MG, MK, MN, MW, MX, MZ, NA, NI, NO, NZ, OM, PG, PH, PL, PT, RO, RU, SC, SD, SE, SG, SK, SL, SM, SY, TJ, TM, TN, TR, TT, TZ, UA, UG, US, UZ, VC, VN, YU, ZA, ZM, ZW.
- (84) Designated States (unless otherwise indicated, for every kind of regional protection available): ARIPO (BW, GH, GM, KE, LS, MW, MZ, NA, SD, SL, SZ, TZ, UG, ZM, ZW), Eurasian (AM, AZ, BY, KG, KZ, MD, RU, TJ, TM), European (AT, BE, BG, CH, CY, CZ, DE, DK, EE, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, HU, IE, IS, IT, LT, LU, MC, NL, PL, PT, RO, SE, SI, SK, TR), OAPI (BF, BJ, CF, CG, CI, CM, GA, GN, GQ, GW, ML, MR, NE, SN, TD, TG).

**Published:**

— without international search report and to be republished upon receipt of that report

For two-letter codes and other abbreviations, refer to the "Guidance Notes on Codes and Abbreviations" appearing at the beginning of each regular issue of the PCT Gazette.

- 
- (54) Title: PYRROLOBENZODIAZEPINES



WO 2005/085259 A2

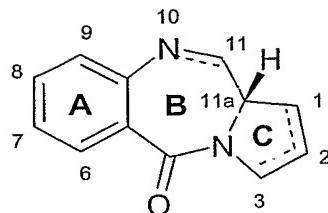
- (57) Abstract: Compounds and a method of synthesis of compounds of formula (Ia) or (Ib); and salts, solvates, and chemically protected forms thereof, wherein the dotted lines indicate the optional presence of a double bond between C1 and C2 or C2 and C3; R<sup>2</sup> and R<sup>3</sup> are independently selected from -H, =O, =CH<sub>2</sub>, -CN, -R, OR, halo, =CH-R, O-SO<sub>2</sub>-R, CO<sub>2</sub>R and COR; R<sup>10</sup> is a carbamate-based nitrogen protecting group; and R<sup>11</sup> is an oxygen protecting group.

**PYRROLOBENZODIAZEPINES**

The present invention relates to pyrrolobenzodiazepines (PBDs), and in particular pyrrolobenzodiazepines useful in the synthesis  
5 of dimeric compounds.

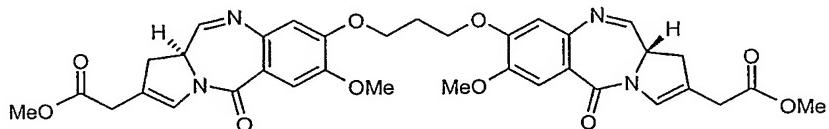
**Background to the invention**

Some pyrrolobenzodiazepines (PBDs) have the ability to recognise and bond to specific sequences of DNA; the preferred sequence is  
10 PuGpu. The first PBD antitumour antibiotic, anthramycin, was discovered in 1965 (Leimgruber, et al., *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **87**, 5793-5795 (1965); Leimgruber, et al., *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **87**, 5791-5793 (1965)). Since then, a number of naturally occurring PBDs have been reported, and over 10 synthetic routes have been  
15 developed to a variety of analogues (Thurston, et al., *Chem. Rev.* **1994**, 433-465 (1994)). Family members include abbeymycin (Hochlowski, et al., *J. Antibiotics*, **40**, 145-148 (1987)), chicamycin (Konishi, et al., *J. Antibiotics*, **37**, 200-206 (1984)), DC-81 (Japanese Patent 58-180 487; Thurston, et al., *Chem. Brit.*,  
20 **26**, 767-772 (1990); Bose, et al., *Tetrahedron*, **48**, 751-758 (1992)), mazethramycin (Kuminoto, et al., *J. Antibiotics*, **33**, 665-667 (1980)), neothramycins A and B (Takeuchi, et al., *J. Antibiotics*, **29**, 93-96 (1976)), porothramycin (Tsunakawa, et al., *J. Antibiotics*, **41**, 1366-1373 (1988)), prothracarcin (Shimizu, et  
25 al., *J. Antibiotics*, **29**, 2492-2503 (1982); Langley and Thurston, *J. Org. Chem.*, **52**, 91-97 (1987)), sibanomicin (DC-102) (Hara, et al., *J. Antibiotics*, **41**, 702-704 (1988); Itoh, et al., *J. Antibiotics*, **41**, 1281-1284 (1988)), sibiromycin (Leber, et al., *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **110**, 2992-2993 (1988)) and tomamycin (Arima, et al., *J. Antibiotics*, **25**, 437-444 (1972)). PBDs are of the general  
30 structure:



They differ in the number, type and position of substituents, in both their aromatic A rings and pyrrolo C rings, and in the degree of saturation of the C ring. In the B-ring there is either an imine ( $\text{N}=\text{C}$ ), a carbinolamine ( $\text{NH}-\text{CH}(\text{OH})$ ), or a carbinolamine methyl ether ( $\text{NH}-\text{CH}(\text{OMe})$ ) at the N10-C11 position which is the electrophilic centre responsible for alkylating DNA. All of the known natural products have an (*S*)-configuration at the chiral C11a position which provides them with a right-handed twist when viewed from the C ring towards the A ring. This gives them the appropriate three-dimensional shape for isohelicity with the minor groove of B-form DNA, leading to a snug fit at the binding site (Kohn, In *Antibiotics III*. Springer-Verlag, New York, pp. 3-11 (1975); Hurley and Needham-VanDevanter, *Acc. Chem. Res.*, 19, 230-15 237 (1986)). Their ability to form an adduct in the minor groove, enables them to interfere with DNA processing, hence their use as antitumour agents.

The present inventors have previously disclosed, in WO 00/12508, dimeric cytotoxic PBD compounds substituted at the C2 position, for example:



The synthesis of these compounds was achieved by formation of the dimeric backbone comprising the assembled A and C rings linked through the A ring by the diether linking chain. The N10 position was then protected with an Alloc group before a ring closure reaction to form the B ring and subsequent deprotection to give the product. The key stage in this synthesis is described as the

ring closure to form the B ring which occurs after the linking of the two A rings with the diether chain.

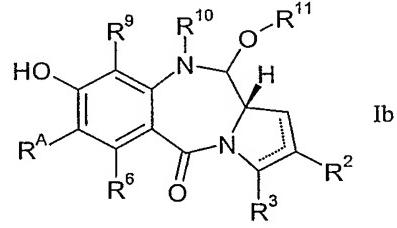
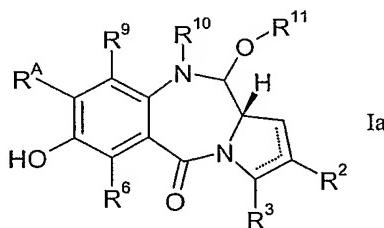
Using this route, to synthesise a number of dimers having the same monomer groups but different bridging groups require the synthesis of each compound from scratch, i.e. the synthesis route is not able to readily produce a diverse collection of PBD dimers, where the diversity is in the dimer bridge.

10

#### **Disclosure of the invention**

The present inventors have developed a key intermediate for the production of dimeric PBDs, which has a hydroxyl group at either the R<sup>8</sup> and/or R<sup>7</sup> position, a carbamate protecting group at the N10 position and a protected hydroxy group at the C11 position.

In a first aspect, the present invention comprises a compound with the formula **Ia** or **Ib**:



20

wherein:

the dotted lines indicate the optional presence of a double bond between C1 and C2 or C2 and C3;

R<sup>2</sup> and R<sup>3</sup> are independently selected from -H, =O, =CH<sub>2</sub>, -CN, -R, OR, halo, =CH-R, O-SO<sub>2</sub>-R, CO<sub>2</sub>R and COR;

25

R<sup>6</sup> and R<sup>9</sup> are independently selected from H, R, OH, OR, SH, SR, NH<sub>2</sub>, NHR, NRR', nitro, Me<sub>3</sub>Sn and halo;

where R and R' are independently selected from optionally substituted C<sub>1-12</sub> alkyl, C<sub>3-20</sub> heterocyclyl and C<sub>5-20</sub> aryl groups;

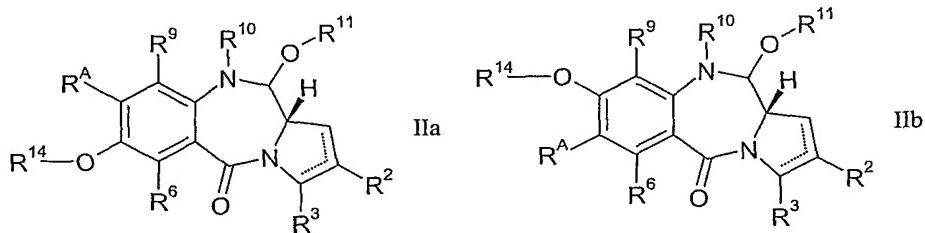
R<sup>A</sup> is selected from H, R, OR, SH, SR, NH<sub>2</sub>, NHR, NHRR', nitro, Me<sub>3</sub>Sn and halo;

R<sup>10</sup> is a carbamate-based nitrogen protecting group;

30

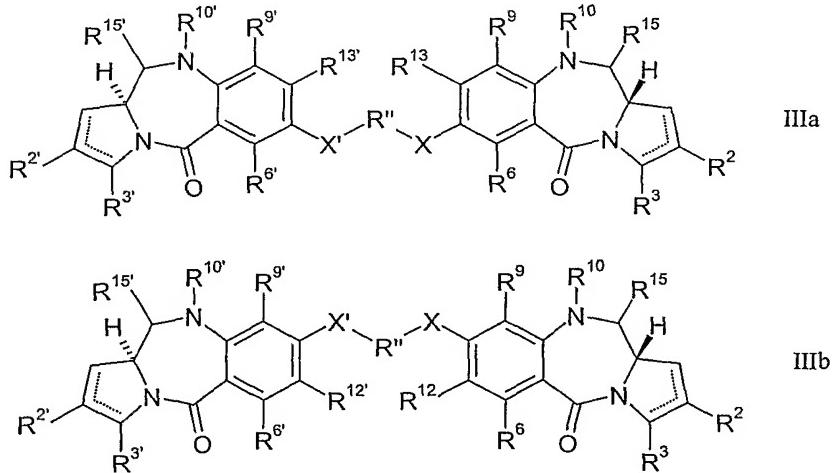
R<sup>11</sup> is an oxygen protecting group.

In a second aspect, the present invention comprises a method of synthesising a compound of formula **Ia** or **Ib** as defined in the first aspect of the invention from a compound of formula **IIa** or **IIb** respectively:



wherein R<sup>A</sup>, R<sup>2</sup>, R<sup>3</sup>, R<sup>6</sup>, R<sup>9</sup>, R<sup>10</sup> and R<sup>11</sup> are as defined in the first aspect; R<sup>14</sup> is an oxygen protecting group which is orthogonal to R<sup>11</sup>.

In a third aspect, the present invention comprises a method of synthesising a compound of formula **IIIa** or **IIIb**:



or a solvate thereof, from a compound of formula **Ia** or **Ib** as defined in the first aspect, wherein R<sup>6</sup>, R<sup>7</sup>, R<sup>8</sup>, and R<sup>9</sup> are as defined in the first aspect;

R<sup>12</sup> and R<sup>13</sup> are independently selected from H, R, OH, OR, SH, SR, NH<sub>2</sub>, NHR, NRR', nitro, Me<sub>3</sub>Sn and halo;

R<sup>10</sup> is as defined in the first aspect and R<sup>15</sup> is either O-R<sup>11</sup>, wherein R<sup>11</sup> is as defined in the first aspect, or OH, or R<sup>10</sup> and R<sup>15</sup> together form a double bond between N10 and C11; and where R" is a C<sub>3-12</sub> alkylene group, which chain may be interrupted by one or more heteroatoms, e.g. O, S, NH, and/or aromatic rings, e.g. benzene or pyridine, and each X is independently selected from O, S, or NH;

5 R<sup>2'</sup>, R<sup>3'</sup>, R<sup>6'</sup>, R<sup>9'</sup>, R<sup>10'</sup>, R<sup>12'</sup>, R<sup>13'</sup> and R<sup>15'</sup> are all independently selected from the same lists as previously defined for R<sup>2</sup>, R<sup>3</sup>, R<sup>6</sup>,

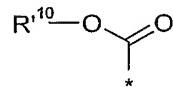
10 R<sup>9</sup>, R<sup>10</sup>, R<sup>12</sup>, R<sup>13</sup> and R<sup>15</sup> respectively.

Further aspects of the present invention relate to novel compounds of formula IIIa or IIIb (including solvates thereof when R<sup>10</sup> and R<sup>15</sup> form a double bond between N10 and C11, and pharmaceutical salts thereof), their use in methods of therapy (particularly in treating proliferative diseases), pharmaceutical compositions comprising these, and their use in the manufacture of a medicament for the treatment of a proliferative disease.

20 Definitions

*Carbamate-based nitrogen protecting groups*

Carbamate-based nitrogen protecting groups are well known in the art, and have the following structure:

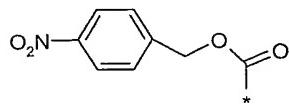


25 wherein R'<sup>10</sup> is R as defined above. A large number of suitable groups are described on pages 503 to 549 of Greene, T.W. and Wuts, G.M., Protective Groups in Organic Synthesis, 3<sup>rd</sup> Edition, John Wiley & Sons, Inc., 1999, which is incorporated herein by reference.

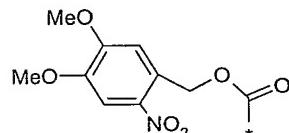
30 Particularly preferred protecting groups include Alloc, Troc, Fmoc, CBz, Teoc, BOC, Doc, Hoc, TcBOC, 1-Adoc and 2-Adoc.

Also suitable for use in the present invention are nitrogen protecting group which can be removed *in vivo* (e.g. enzymatically, using light) as described in WO 00/12507, which is incorporated herein by reference. Examples of these protecting groups include:

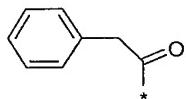
5



, which is nitroreductase labile (e.g. using ADEPT/GDEPT);

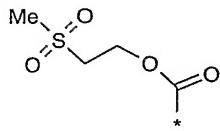


and



, which are photolabile; and

10



which is glutathione labile (e.g. using NPEPT).

#### Oxygen protecting groups

Oxygen protecting groups are well known in the art. A large number of suitable groups are described on pages 23 to 200 of Greene, T.W. and Wuts, G.M., Protective Groups in Organic Synthesis, 3<sup>rd</sup> Edition, John Wiley & Sons, Inc., 1999, which is incorporated herein by reference.

20

Classes of particular interest include silyl ethers, methyl ethers, alkyl ethers, benzyl ethers, esters, benzoates, carbonates, and sulfonates.

25

Preferred oxygen protecting groups include TBS, THP for the C11 oxygen atom, and benzyl ether for the C7 or C8 oxygen atom (where present).

As mentioned above the oxygen protecting group R<sup>14</sup> should be orthogonal to the oxygen protecting group R<sup>11</sup>. Protecting groups which are orthogonal to one another may each be removed using reagents or conditions which do not remove the other protecting group.

5

It may also be preferred that any protecting groups used during the synthesis and use of compounds of formula I are orthogonal to one another. However, it is often not necessary, but may be desirable, for the carbamate-based nitrogen protecting group and R<sup>11</sup> to be orthogonal to one another, depending on whether the compound of formula IIIa or IIIb is to be used with the nitrogen protecting group in place.

10

15 *Substituents*

The phrase "optionally substituted" as used herein, pertains to a parent group which may be unsubstituted or which may be substituted.

20

Unless otherwise specified, the term "substituted" as used herein, pertains to a parent group which bears one or more substituents. The term "substituent" is used herein in the conventional sense and refers to a chemical moiety which is covalently attached to, or if appropriate, fused to, a parent group. A wide variety of substituents are well known, and methods for their formation and introduction into a variety of parent groups are also well known.

25

Examples of substituents are described in more detail below.

30

C<sub>1-12</sub> alkyl: The term "C<sub>1-12</sub> alkyl" as used herein, pertains to a monovalent moiety obtained by removing a hydrogen atom from a carbon atom of a hydrocarbon compound having from 1 to 12 carbon atoms, which may be aliphatic or alicyclic, and which may be saturated or unsaturated (e.g. partially unsaturated, fully unsaturated). Thus, the term "alkyl" includes the sub-classes alkenyl, alkynyl, cycloalkyl, etc., discussed below.

35

Examples of saturated alkyl groups include, but are not limited to, methyl (C<sub>1</sub>), ethyl (C<sub>2</sub>), propyl (C<sub>3</sub>), butyl (C<sub>4</sub>), pentyl (C<sub>5</sub>), hexyl (C<sub>6</sub>) and heptyl (C<sub>7</sub>).

5

Examples of saturated linear alkyl groups include, but are not limited to, methyl (C<sub>1</sub>), ethyl (C<sub>2</sub>), n-propyl (C<sub>3</sub>), n-butyl (C<sub>4</sub>), n-pentyl (amyl) (C<sub>5</sub>), n-hexyl (C<sub>6</sub>) and n-heptyl (C<sub>7</sub>).

10 Examples of saturated branched alkyl groups include iso-propyl (C<sub>3</sub>), iso-butyl (C<sub>4</sub>), sec-butyl (C<sub>4</sub>), tert-butyl (C<sub>4</sub>), iso-pentyl (C<sub>5</sub>), and neo-pentyl (C<sub>5</sub>).

15 C<sub>2-12</sub> Alkenyl: The term "C<sub>2-12</sub> alkenyl" as used herein, pertains to an alkyl group having one or more carbon-carbon double bonds.

20 Examples of unsaturated alkenyl groups include, but are not limited to, ethenyl (vinyl, -CH=CH<sub>2</sub>), 1-propenyl (-CH=CH-CH<sub>3</sub>), 2-propenyl (allyl, -CH-CH=CH<sub>2</sub>), isopropenyl (1-methylvinyl, -C(CH<sub>3</sub>)=CH<sub>2</sub>), butenyl (C<sub>4</sub>), pentenyl (C<sub>5</sub>), and hexenyl (C<sub>6</sub>).

C<sub>2-12</sub> alkynyl: The term "C<sub>2-12</sub> alkynyl" as used herein, pertains to an alkyl group having one or more carbon-carbon triple bonds.

25 Examples of unsaturated alkynyl groups include, but are not limited to, ethynyl (ethinyl, -C≡CH) and 2-propynyl (propargyl, -CH<sub>2</sub>-C≡CH) .

30 C<sub>3-12</sub> cycloalkyl: The term "C<sub>3-12</sub> cycloalkyl" as used herein, pertains to an alkyl group which is also a cyclyl group; that is, a monovalent moiety obtained by removing a hydrogen atom from an alicyclic ring atom of a cyclic hydrocarbon (carbocyclic) compound, which moiety has from 3 to 7 carbon atoms, including from 3 to 7 ring atoms.

35

Examples of cycloalkyl groups include, but are not limited to, those derived from:

saturated monocyclic hydrocarbon compounds:

5 cyclopropane (C<sub>3</sub>), cyclobutane (C<sub>4</sub>), cyclopentane (C<sub>5</sub>), cyclohexane (C<sub>6</sub>), cycloheptane (C<sub>7</sub>), methylcyclopropane (C<sub>4</sub>), dimethylcyclopropane (C<sub>5</sub>), methylcyclobutane (C<sub>5</sub>), dimethylcyclobutane (C<sub>6</sub>), methylcyclopentane (C<sub>6</sub>), dimethylcyclopentane (C<sub>7</sub>) and methylcyclohexane (C<sub>7</sub>);

unsaturated monocyclic hydrocarbon compounds:

10 cyclopropene (C<sub>3</sub>), cyclobutene (C<sub>4</sub>), cyclopentene (C<sub>5</sub>), cyclohexene (C<sub>6</sub>), methylcyclopropene (C<sub>4</sub>), dimethylcyclopropene (C<sub>5</sub>), methylcyclobutene (C<sub>5</sub>), dimethylcyclobutene (C<sub>6</sub>), methylcyclopentene (C<sub>6</sub>), dimethylcyclopentene (C<sub>7</sub>) and methylcyclohexene (C<sub>7</sub>); and

15 saturated polycyclic hydrocarbon compounds:

norcarane (C<sub>7</sub>), norpinane (C<sub>7</sub>), norbornane (C<sub>7</sub>).

C<sub>3-20</sub> heterocyclyl: The term "C<sub>3-20</sub> heterocyclyl" as used herein, pertains to a monovalent moiety obtained by removing a hydrogen atom from a ring atom of a heterocyclic compound, which moiety has from 3 to 20 ring atoms, of which from 1 to 10 are ring 20 heteroatoms. Preferably, each ring has from 3 to 7 ring atoms, of which from 1 to 4 are ring heteroatoms.

25 In this context, the prefixes (e.g. C<sub>3-20</sub>, C<sub>3-7</sub>, C<sub>5-6</sub>, etc.) denote the number of ring atoms, or range of number of ring atoms, whether carbon atoms or heteroatoms. For example, the term "C<sub>5-6</sub>heterocyclyl", as used herein, pertains to a heterocyclyl group having 5 or 6 ring atoms.

30 Examples of monocyclic heterocyclyl groups include, but are not limited to, those derived from:

N<sub>1</sub>: aziridine (C<sub>3</sub>), azetidine (C<sub>4</sub>), pyrrolidine (tetrahydropyrrole) (C<sub>5</sub>), pyrroline (e.g., 3-pyrroline, 2,5-dihydropyrrole) (C<sub>5</sub>), 2H-pyrrole or 3H-pyrrole (isopyrrole, isoazole) (C<sub>5</sub>), piperidine (C<sub>6</sub>), dihydropyridine (C<sub>6</sub>), tetrahydropyridine (C<sub>6</sub>), azepine (C<sub>7</sub>);

O<sub>1</sub>: oxirane (C<sub>3</sub>), oxetane (C<sub>4</sub>), oxolane (tetrahydrofuran) (C<sub>5</sub>), oxole (dihydrofuran) (C<sub>5</sub>), oxane (tetrahydropyran) (C<sub>6</sub>), dihydropyran (C<sub>6</sub>), pyran (C<sub>6</sub>), oxepin (C<sub>7</sub>);  
S<sub>1</sub>: thirane (C<sub>3</sub>), thietane (C<sub>4</sub>), thiolane (tetrahydrothiophene) (C<sub>5</sub>), thiane (tetrahydrothiopyran) (C<sub>6</sub>), thiepane (C<sub>7</sub>);  
O<sub>2</sub>: dioxolane (C<sub>5</sub>), dioxane (C<sub>6</sub>), and dioxepane (C<sub>7</sub>);  
O<sub>3</sub>: trioxane (C<sub>6</sub>);  
N<sub>2</sub>: imidazolidine (C<sub>5</sub>), pyrazolidine (diazolidine) (C<sub>5</sub>), imidazoline (C<sub>5</sub>), pyrazoline (dihydropyrazole) (C<sub>5</sub>), piperazine (C<sub>6</sub>);  
N<sub>1</sub>O<sub>1</sub>: tetrahydrooxazole (C<sub>5</sub>), dihydrooxazole (C<sub>5</sub>), tetrahydroisoxazole (C<sub>5</sub>), dihydroisoxazole (C<sub>5</sub>), morpholine (C<sub>6</sub>), tetrahydrooxazine (C<sub>6</sub>), dihydrooxazine (C<sub>6</sub>), oxazine (C<sub>6</sub>);  
N<sub>1</sub>S<sub>1</sub>: thiazoline (C<sub>5</sub>), thiazolidine (C<sub>5</sub>), thiomorpholine (C<sub>6</sub>);  
N<sub>2</sub>O<sub>1</sub>: oxadiazine (C<sub>6</sub>);  
O<sub>1</sub>S<sub>1</sub>: oxathiole (C<sub>5</sub>) and oxathiane (thioxane) (C<sub>6</sub>); and,  
N<sub>1</sub>O<sub>1</sub>S<sub>1</sub>: oxathiazine (C<sub>6</sub>).

Examples of substituted monocyclic heterocyclyl groups include those derived from saccharides, in cyclic form, for example, furanoses (C<sub>5</sub>), such as arabinofuranose, lyxofuranose, ribofuranose, and xylofuranose, and pyranoses (C<sub>6</sub>), such as allopyranose, altropyranose, glucopyranose, mannopyranose, gulopyranose, idopyranose, galactopyranose, and talopyranose.

C<sub>5-20</sub> aryl: The term "C<sub>5-20</sub> aryl", as used herein, pertains to a monovalent moiety obtained by removing a hydrogen atom from an aromatic ring atom of an aromatic compound, which moiety has from 3 to 20 ring atoms. Preferably, each ring has from 5 to 7 ring atoms.

In this context, the prefixes (e.g. C<sub>3-20</sub>, C<sub>5-7</sub>, C<sub>5-6</sub>, etc.) denote the number of ring atoms, or range of number of ring atoms, whether carbon atoms or heteroatoms. For example, the term "C<sub>5-6</sub> aryl" as used herein, pertains to an aryl group having 5 or 6 ring atoms.

The ring atoms may be all carbon atoms, as in "carboaryl groups". Examples of carboaryl groups include, but are not limited to, those derived from benzene (i.e. phenyl) ( $C_6$ ), naphthalene ( $C_{10}$ ), azulene ( $C_{10}$ ), anthracene ( $C_{14}$ ), phenanthrene ( $C_{14}$ ), naphthacene ( $C_{18}$ ), and pyrene ( $C_{16}$ ).

Examples of aryl groups which comprise fused rings, at least one of which is an aromatic ring, include, but are not limited to, groups derived from indane (e.g. 2,3-dihydro-1H-indene) ( $C_9$ ), indene ( $C_9$ ), isoindene ( $C_9$ ), tetraline (1,2,3,4-tetrahydronaphthalene ( $C_{10}$ )), acenaphthene ( $C_{12}$ ), fluorene ( $C_{13}$ ), phenalene ( $C_{13}$ ), acephenanthrene ( $C_{15}$ ), and aceanthrene ( $C_{16}$ ).

Alternatively, the ring atoms may include one or more heteroatoms, as in "heteroaryl groups". Examples of monocyclic heteroaryl groups include, but are not limited to, those derived from:

$N_1$ : pyrrole (azole) ( $C_5$ ), pyridine (azine) ( $C_6$ );

$O_1$ : furan (oxole) ( $C_5$ );

$S_1$ : thiophene (thiole) ( $C_5$ );

$N_1O_1$ : oxazole ( $C_5$ ), isoxazole ( $C_5$ ), isoxazine ( $C_6$ );

$N_2O_1$ : oxadiazole (furazan) ( $C_5$ );

$N_3O_1$ : oxatriazole ( $C_5$ );

$N_1S_1$ : thiazole ( $C_5$ ), isothiazole ( $C_5$ );

$N_2$ : imidazole (1,3-diazole) ( $C_5$ ), pyrazole (1,2-diazole) ( $C_5$ ),

pyridazine (1,2-diazine) ( $C_6$ ), pyrimidine (1,3-diazine) ( $C_6$ ) (e.g., cytosine, thymine, uracil), pyrazine (1,4-diazine) ( $C_6$ );

$N_3$ : triazole ( $C_5$ ), triazine ( $C_6$ ); and,

$N_4$ : tetrazole ( $C_5$ ).

30

Examples of heteroaryl which comprise fused rings, include, but are not limited to:

$C_9$  (with 2 fused rings) derived from benzofuran ( $O_1$ ), isobenzofuran ( $O_1$ ), indole ( $N_1$ ), isoindole ( $N_1$ ), indolizine ( $N_1$ ), indoline ( $N_1$ ), isoindoline ( $N_1$ ), purine ( $N_4$ ) (e.g., adenine, guanine), benzimidazole ( $N_2$ ), indazole ( $N_2$ ), benzoxazole ( $N_1O_1$ ),

benzisoxazole ( $N_1O_1$ ), benzodioxole ( $O_2$ ), benzofurazan ( $N_2O_1$ ), benzotriazole ( $N_3$ ), benzothiofuran ( $S_1$ ), benzothiazole ( $N_1S_1$ ), benzothiadiazole ( $N_2S$ );

5            $C_{10}$  (with 2 fused rings) derived from chromene ( $O_1$ ), isochromene ( $O_1$ ), chroman ( $O_1$ ), isochroman ( $O_1$ ), benzodioxan ( $O_2$ ), quinoline ( $N_1$ ), isoquinoline ( $N_1$ ), quinolizine ( $N_1$ ), benzoxazine ( $N_1O_1$ ), benzodiazine ( $N_2$ ), pyridopyridine ( $N_2$ ), quinoxaline ( $N_2$ ), quinazoline ( $N_2$ ), cinnoline ( $N_2$ ), phthalazine ( $N_2$ ), naphthyridine ( $N_2$ ), pteridine ( $N_4$ );

10           $C_{11}$  (with 2 fused rings) derived from benzodiazepine ( $N_2$ );

$C_{13}$  (with 3 fused rings) derived from carbazole ( $N_1$ ), dibenzofuran ( $O_1$ ), dibenzothiophene ( $S_1$ ), carboline ( $N_2$ ), perimidine ( $N_2$ ), pyridoindole ( $N_2$ ); and,

15           $C_{14}$  (with 3 fused rings) derived from acridine ( $N_1$ ), xanthene ( $O_1$ ), thioxanthene ( $S_1$ ), oxanthrene ( $O_2$ ), phenoxathiin ( $O_1S_1$ ), phenazine ( $N_2$ ), phenoxazine ( $N_1O_1$ ), phenothiazine ( $N_1S_1$ ), thianthrene ( $S_2$ ), phenanthridine ( $N_1$ ), phenanthroline ( $N_2$ ), phenazine ( $N_2$ ).

20          The above groups, whether alone or part of another substituent, may themselves optionally be substituted with one or more groups selected from themselves and the additional substituents listed below.

25          Halo: -F, -Cl, -Br, and -I.

Hydroxy: -OH.

Ether: -OR, wherein R is an ether substituent, for example, a  $C_{1-7}$  alkyl group (also referred to as a  $C_{1-7}$  alkoxy group, discussed below), a  $C_{3-20}$  heterocyclyl group (also referred to as a  $C_{3-20}$  heterocyclyloxy group), or a  $C_{5-20}$  aryl group (also referred to as a  $C_{5-20}$  aryloxy group), preferably a  $C_{1-7}$  alkyl group.

35          Alkoxy: -OR, wherein R is an alkyl group, for example, a  $C_{1-7}$  alkyl group. Examples of  $C_{1-7}$  alkoxy groups include, but are not limited

to, -OMe (methoxy), -OEt (ethoxy), -O(nPr) (n-propoxy), -O(iPr) (isopropoxy), -O(nBu) (n-butoxy), -O(sBu) (sec-butoxy), -O(iBu) (isobutoxy), and -O(tBu) (tert-butoxy).

5       Acetal: -CH(OR<sup>1</sup>)(OR<sup>2</sup>), wherein R<sup>1</sup> and R<sup>2</sup> are independently acetal substituents, for example, a C<sub>1-7</sub> alkyl group, a C<sub>3-20</sub> heterocyclyl group, or a C<sub>5-20</sub> aryl group, preferably a C<sub>1-7</sub> alkyl group, or, in the case of a "cyclic" acetal group, R<sup>1</sup> and R<sup>2</sup>, taken together with the two oxygen atoms to which they are attached, and the carbon atoms to which they are attached, form a heterocyclic ring having from 4 to 8 ring atoms. Examples of acetal groups include, but are not limited to, -CH(OMe)<sub>2</sub>, -CH(OEt)<sub>2</sub>, and -CH(OMe)(OEt).

15      Hemiacetal: -CH(OH)(OR<sup>1</sup>), wherein R<sup>1</sup> is a hemiacetal substituent, for example, a C<sub>1-7</sub> alkyl group, a C<sub>3-20</sub> heterocyclyl group, or a C<sub>5-20</sub> aryl group, preferably a C<sub>1-7</sub> alkyl group. Examples of hemiacetal groups include, but are not limited to, -CH(OH)(OMe) and -CH(OH)(OEt).

20      Ketal: -CR(OR<sup>1</sup>)(OR<sup>2</sup>), where R<sup>1</sup> and R<sup>2</sup> are as defined for acetals, and R is a ketal substituent other than hydrogen, for example, a C<sub>1-7</sub> alkyl group, a C<sub>3-20</sub> heterocyclyl group, or a C<sub>5-20</sub> aryl group, preferably a C<sub>1-7</sub> alkyl group. Examples ketal groups include, but are not limited to, -C(Me)(OMe)<sub>2</sub>, -C(Me)(OEt)<sub>2</sub>, -C(Me)(OMe)(OEt), -C(Et)(OMe)<sub>2</sub>, -C(Et)(OEt)<sub>2</sub>, and -C(Et)(OMe)(OEt).

25      Hemiketal: -CR(OH)(OR<sup>1</sup>), where R<sup>1</sup> is as defined for hemiacetals, and R is a hemiketal substituent other than hydrogen, for example, a C<sub>1-7</sub> alkyl group, a C<sub>3-20</sub> heterocyclyl group, or a C<sub>5-20</sub> aryl group, preferably a C<sub>1-7</sub> alkyl group. Examples of hemiacetal groups include, but are not limited to, -C(Me)(OH)(OMe), -C(Et)(OH)(OMe), -C(Me)(OH)(OEt), and -C(Et)(OH)(OEt).

30      Oxo (keto, -one): =O.

35

Thione (thioketone): =S.

5 Imino (imine): =NR, wherein R is an imino substituent, for example, hydrogen, C<sub>1-7</sub> alkyl group, a C<sub>3-20</sub> heterocyclyl group, or a C<sub>5-20</sub> aryl group, preferably hydrogen or a C<sub>1-7</sub> alkyl group. Examples of ester groups include, but are not limited to, =NH, =NMe, =NET, and =NPh.

Formyl (carbaldehyde, carboxaldehyde): -C(=O)H.

10 Acyl (keto): -C(=O)R, wherein R is an acyl substituent, for example, a C<sub>1-7</sub> alkyl group (also referred to as C<sub>1-7</sub> alkylacyl or C<sub>1-7</sub> alkanoyl), a C<sub>3-20</sub> heterocyclyl group (also referred to as C<sub>3-20</sub> heterocyclylacyl), or a C<sub>5-20</sub> aryl group (also referred to as C<sub>5-20</sub> arylacyl), preferably a C<sub>1-7</sub> alkyl group. Examples of acyl groups 15 include, but are not limited to, -C(=O)CH<sub>3</sub> (acetyl), -C(=O)CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub> (propionyl), -C(=O)C(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>3</sub> (t-butyryl), and -C(=O)Ph (benzoyl, phenone).

Carboxy (carboxylic acid): -C(=O)OH.

20 Thiocarboxy (thiocarboxylic acid): -C(=S)SH.

Thiolocarboxy (thiolocarboxylic acid): -C(=O)SH.

25 Thionocarboxy (thionocarboxylic acid): -C(=S)OH.

Imidic acid: -C(=NH)OH.

Hydroxamic acid: -C(=NOH)OH.

30 Ester (carboxylate, carboxylic acid ester, oxy carbonyl): -C(=O)OR, wherein R is an ester substituent, for example, a C<sub>1-7</sub> alkyl group, a C<sub>3-20</sub> heterocyclyl group, or a C<sub>5-20</sub> aryl group, preferably a C<sub>1-7</sub> alkyl group. Examples of ester groups include, but are not limited to, -C(=O)OCH<sub>3</sub>, -C(=O)OCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>, -C(=O)OC(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>3</sub>, and -C(=O)OPh.

Acyloxy (reverse ester):  $-OC(=O)R$ , wherein R is an acyloxy substituent, for example, a C<sub>1-7</sub> alkyl group, a C<sub>3-20</sub> heterocyclyl group, or a C<sub>5-20</sub> aryl group, preferably a C<sub>1-7</sub> alkyl group. Examples of acyloxy groups include, but are not limited to,  $-OC(=O)CH_3$  (acetoxy),  $-OC(=O)CH_2CH_3$ ,  $-OC(=O)C(CH_3)_3$ ,  $-OC(=O)Ph$ , and  $-OC(=O)CH_2Ph$ .

Oxycarboxyloxy:  $-OC(=O)OR$ , wherein R is an ester substituent, for example, a C<sub>1-7</sub> alkyl group, a C<sub>3-20</sub> heterocyclyl group, or a C<sub>5-20</sub> aryl group, preferably a C<sub>1-7</sub> alkyl group. Examples of ester groups include, but are not limited to,  $-OC(=O)OCH_3$ ,  $-OC(=O)OCH_2CH_3$ ,  $-OC(=O)OC(CH_3)_3$ , and  $-OC(=O)OPh$ .

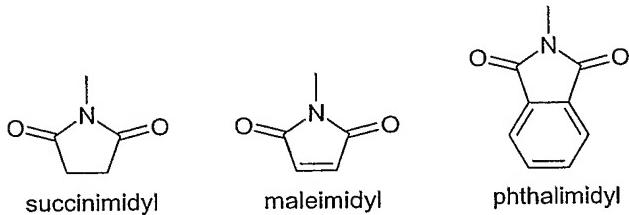
Amino:  $-NR^1R^2$ , wherein R<sup>1</sup> and R<sup>2</sup> are independently amino substituents, for example, hydrogen, a C<sub>1-7</sub> alkyl group (also referred to as C<sub>1-7</sub> alkylamino or di-C<sub>1-7</sub> alkylamino), a C<sub>3-20</sub> heterocyclyl group, or a C<sub>5-20</sub> aryl group, preferably H or a C<sub>1-7</sub> alkyl group, or, in the case of a "cyclic" amino group, R<sup>1</sup> and R<sup>2</sup>, taken together with the nitrogen atom to which they are attached, form a heterocyclic ring having from 4 to 8 ring atoms. Amino groups may be primary ( $-NH_2$ ), secondary ( $-NHR^1$ ), or tertiary ( $-NHR^1R^2$ ), and in cationic form, may be quaternary ( ${}^+NR^1R^2R^3$ ). Examples of amino groups include, but are not limited to,  $-NH_2$ ,  $-NHCH_3$ ,  $-NHC(CH_3)_2$ ,  $-N(CH_3)_2$ ,  $-N(CH_2CH_3)_2$ , and  $-NHPH$ . Examples of cyclic amino groups include, but are not limited to, aziridino, azetidino, pyrrolidino, piperidino, piperazino, morpholino, and thiomorpholino.

Amido (carbamoyl, carbamyl, aminocarbonyl, carboxamide):  $-C(=O)NR^1R^2$ , wherein R<sup>1</sup> and R<sup>2</sup> are independently amino substituents, as defined for amino groups. Examples of amido groups include, but are not limited to,  $-C(=O)NH_2$ ,  $-C(=O)NHCH_3$ ,  $-C(=O)N(CH_3)_2$ ,  $-C(=O)NHCH_2CH_3$ , and  $-C(=O)N(CH_2CH_3)_2$ , as well as amido groups in which R<sup>1</sup> and R<sup>2</sup>, together with the nitrogen atom to which they are attached, form a heterocyclic structure as in, for example,

piperidinocarbonyl, morpholinocarbonyl, thiomorpholinocarbonyl, and piperazinocarbonyl.

Thioamido (thiocarbamyl):  $-C(=S)NR^1R^2$ , wherein  $R^1$  and  $R^2$  are independently amino substituents, as defined for amino groups. Examples of amido groups include, but are not limited to,  $-C(=S)NH_2$ ,  $-C(=S)NHCH_3$ ,  $-C(=S)N(CH_3)_2$ , and  $-C(=S)NHCH_2CH_3$ .

Acylamido (acylamino):  $-NR^1C(=O)R^2$ , wherein  $R^1$  is an amide substituent, for example, hydrogen, a  $C_{1-7}$  alkyl group, a  $C_{3-20}$  heterocyclyl group, or a  $C_{5-20}$  aryl group, preferably hydrogen or a  $C_{1-7}$  alkyl group, and  $R^2$  is an acyl substituent, for example, a  $C_{1-7}$  alkyl group, a  $C_{3-20}$  heterocyclyl group, or a  $C_{5-20}$  aryl group, preferably hydrogen or a  $C_{1-7}$  alkyl group. Examples of acylamide groups include, but are not limited to,  $-NHC(=O)CH_3$ ,  $-NHC(=O)CH_2CH_3$ , and  $-NHC(=O)Ph$ .  $R^1$  and  $R^2$  may together form a cyclic structure, as in, for example, succinimidyl, maleimidyl, and phthalimidyl:



Aminocarbonyloxy:  $-OC(=O)NR^1R^2$ , wherein  $R^1$  and  $R^2$  are independently amino substituents, as defined for amino groups. Examples of aminocarbonyloxy groups include, but are not limited to,  $-OC(=O)NH_2$ ,  $-OC(=O)NHMe$ ,  $-OC(=O)NMe_2$ , and  $-OC(=O)NET_2$ .

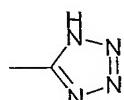
Ureido:  $-N(R^1)CONR^2R^3$  wherein  $R^2$  and  $R^3$  are independently amino substituents, as defined for amino groups, and  $R^1$  is a ureido substituent, for example, hydrogen, a  $C_{1-7}$  alkyl group, a  $C_{3-20}$  heterocyclyl group, or a  $C_{5-20}$  aryl group, preferably hydrogen or a  $C_{1-7}$  alkyl group. Examples of ureido groups include, but are not

limited to, -NHCONH<sub>2</sub>, -NHCONHMe, -NHCONHET, -NHCONMe<sub>2</sub>, -NHCONEt<sub>2</sub>, -NMeCONH<sub>2</sub>, -NMeCONHMe, -NMeCONHET, -NMeCONMe<sub>2</sub>, and -NMeCONEt<sub>2</sub>.

Guanidino: -NH-C(=NH)NH<sub>2</sub>.

5

Tetrazolyl: a five membered aromatic ring having four nitrogen atoms and one carbon atom,



10 Imino: =NR, wherein R is an imino substituent, for example, for example, hydrogen, a C<sub>1-7</sub> alkyl group, a C<sub>3-20</sub> heterocyclyl group, or a C<sub>5-20</sub> aryl group, preferably H or a C<sub>1-7</sub>alkyl group. Examples of imino groups include, but are not limited to, =NH, =NMe, and =NET.

15 Amidine (amidino): -C(=NR)NR<sub>2</sub>, wherein each R is an amidine substituent, for example, hydrogen, a C<sub>1-7</sub> alkyl group, a C<sub>3-20</sub> heterocyclyl group, or a C<sub>5-20</sub> aryl group, preferably H or a C<sub>1-7</sub> alkyl group. Examples of amidine groups include, but are not limited to, -C(=NH)NH<sub>2</sub>, -C(=NH)NMe<sub>2</sub>, and -C(=NMe)NMe<sub>2</sub>.

20

Nitro: -NO<sub>2</sub>.

Nitroso: -NO.

25 Azido: -N<sub>3</sub>.

Cyano (nitrile, carbonitrile): -CN.

Isocyano: -NC.

30

Cyanato: -OCN.

Isocyanato: -NCO.

Thiocyano (thiocyanato): -SCN.

Isothiocyano (isothiocyanato): -NCS.

5      Sulfhydryl (thiol, mercapto): -SH.

Thioether (sulfide): -SR, wherein R is a thioether substituent, for example, a C<sub>1-7</sub> alkyl group (also referred to as a C<sub>1-7</sub>alkylthio group), a C<sub>3-20</sub> heterocyclyl group, or a C<sub>5-20</sub> aryl group, preferably a C<sub>1-7</sub> alkyl group. Examples of C<sub>1-7</sub> alkylthio groups include, but are not limited to, -SCH<sub>3</sub> and -SCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>.

15     Disulfide: -SS-R, wherein R is a disulfide substituent, for example, a C<sub>1-7</sub> alkyl group, a C<sub>3-20</sub> heterocyclyl group, or a C<sub>5-20</sub> aryl group, preferably a C<sub>1-7</sub> alkyl group (also referred to herein as C<sub>1-7</sub> alkyl disulfide). Examples of C<sub>1-7</sub> alkyl disulfide groups include, but are not limited to, -SSCH<sub>3</sub> and -SSCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>.

20     Sulfine (sulfinyl, sulfoxide): -S(=O)R, wherein R is a sulfine substituent, for example, a C<sub>1-7</sub> alkyl group, a C<sub>3-20</sub> heterocyclyl group, or a C<sub>5-20</sub> aryl group, preferably a C<sub>1-7</sub> alkyl group. Examples of sulfine groups include, but are not limited to, -S(=O)CH<sub>3</sub> and -S(=O)CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>.

25     Sulfone (sulfonyl): -S(=O)<sub>2</sub>R, wherein R is a sulfone substituent, for example, a C<sub>1-7</sub> alkyl group, a C<sub>3-20</sub> heterocyclyl group, or a C<sub>5-20</sub> aryl group, preferably a C<sub>1-7</sub> alkyl group, including, for example, a fluorinated or perfluorinated C<sub>1-7</sub> alkyl group. Examples of sulfone groups include, but are not limited to, -S(=O)<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub> (methanesulfonyl, mesyl), -S(=O)<sub>2</sub>CF<sub>3</sub> (triflyl), -S(=O)<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub> (esyl), -S(=O)<sub>2</sub>C<sub>4</sub>F<sub>9</sub> (nonaflyl), -S(=O)<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CF<sub>3</sub> (tresyl), -S(=O)<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>NH<sub>2</sub> (tauryl), -S(=O)<sub>2</sub>Ph (phenylsulfonyl, besyl), 4-methylphenylsulfonyl (tosyl), 4-chlorophenylsulfonyl (closyl), 4-bromophenylsulfonyl (brosyl), 4-nitrophenyl (nosyl), 35     2-naphthalenesulfonate (napsyl), and 5-dimethylamino-naphthalen-1-ylsulfonate (dansyl).

Sulfinic acid (sulfino):  $-\text{S}(=\text{O})\text{OH}$ ,  $-\text{SO}_2\text{H}$ .

Sulfonic acid (sulfo):  $-\text{S}(\text{=O})_2\text{OH}$ ,  $-\text{SO}_3\text{H}$ .

Sulfinate (sulfinic acid ester):  $-S(=O)OR$ ; wherein R is a sulfinate substituent, for example, a C<sub>1-7</sub> alkyl group, a C<sub>3-20</sub> heterocyclyl group, or a C<sub>5-20</sub> aryl group, preferably a C<sub>1-7</sub> alkyl group. Examples of sulfinate groups include, but are not limited to,  $-S(=O)OCH_3$  (methoxysulfinyl; methyl sulfinate) and  $-S(=O)OCH_2CH_3$  (ethoxysulfinyl; ethyl sulfinate).

Sulfonate (sulfonic acid ester):  $-S(=O)_2OR$ , wherein R is a sulfonate substituent, for example, a C<sub>1-7</sub> alkyl group, a C<sub>3-20</sub> heterocyclyl group, or a C<sub>5-20</sub> aryl group, preferably a C<sub>1-7</sub> alkyl group. Examples of sulfonate groups include, but are not limited to,  $-S(=O)_2OCH_3$  (methoxysulfonyl; methyl sulfonate) and  $-S(=O)_2OCH_2CH_3$  (ethoxysulfonyl; ethyl sulfonate).

20 Sulfinyloxy:  $-\text{OS}(=\text{O})\text{R}$ , wherein R is a sulfinyloxy substituent, for example, a C<sub>1-7</sub> alkyl group, a C<sub>3-20</sub> heterocyclyl group, or a C<sub>5-20</sub> aryl group, preferably a C<sub>1-7</sub> alkyl group. Examples of sulfinyloxy groups include, but are not limited to,  $-\text{OS}(=\text{O})\text{CH}_3$  and  $-\text{OS}(=\text{O})\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_3$ .

25       Sulfonyloxy:  $-\text{OS}(=\text{O})_2\text{R}$ , wherein R is a sulfonyloxy substituent, for  
example, a C<sub>1-7</sub> alkyl group, a C<sub>3-20</sub> heterocyclyl group, or a C<sub>5-20</sub>  
aryl group, preferably a C<sub>1-7</sub> alkyl group. Examples of sulfonyloxy  
groups include, but are not limited to,  $-\text{OS}(=\text{O})_2\text{CH}_3$  (mesylate) and  
30        $-\text{OS}(=\text{O})_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_3$  (esylate).

Sulfate:  $-\text{OS}(\text{=O})_2\text{OR}$ ; wherein R is a sulfate substituent, for example, a C<sub>1-7</sub> alkyl group, a C<sub>3-20</sub> heterocyclyl group, or a C<sub>5-20</sub> aryl group, preferably a C<sub>1-7</sub> alkyl group. Examples of sulfate groups include, but are not limited to,  $-\text{OS}(\text{=O})_2\text{OCH}_3$  and  $-\text{SO}(\text{=O})_2\text{OCH}_2\text{CH}_3$ .

Sulfamyl (sulfamoyl; sulfinic acid amide; sulfinamide):  
-S(=O)NR<sup>1</sup>R<sup>2</sup>, wherein R<sup>1</sup> and R<sup>2</sup> are independently amino substituents,  
as defined for amino groups. Examples of sulfamyl groups include,  
5 but are not limited to, -S(=O)NH<sub>2</sub>, -S(=O)NH(CH<sub>3</sub>), -S(=O)N(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>,  
-S(=O)NH(CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>), -S(=O)N(CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>, and -S(=O)NHPH.

Sulfonamido (sulfinamoyl; sulfonic acid amide; sulfonamide):  
-S(=O)<sub>2</sub>NR<sup>1</sup>R<sup>2</sup>, wherein R<sup>1</sup> and R<sup>2</sup> are independently amino  
10 substituents, as defined for amino groups. Examples of  
sulfonamido groups include, but are not limited to, -S(=O)<sub>2</sub>NH<sub>2</sub>,  
-S(=O)<sub>2</sub>NH(CH<sub>3</sub>), -S(=O)<sub>2</sub>N(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>, -S(=O)<sub>2</sub>NH(CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>), -S(=O)<sub>2</sub>N(CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>,  
and -S(=O)<sub>2</sub>NHPH.

15 Sulfamino: -NR<sup>1</sup>S(=O)<sub>2</sub>OH, wherein R<sup>1</sup> is an amino substituent, as  
defined for amino groups. Examples of sulfamino groups include,  
but are not limited to, -NHS(=O)<sub>2</sub>OH and -N(CH<sub>3</sub>)S(=O)<sub>2</sub>OH.

20 Sulfonamino: -NR<sup>1</sup>S(=O)<sub>2</sub>R, wherein R<sup>1</sup> is an amino substituent, as  
defined for amino groups, and R is a sulfonamino substituent, for  
example, a C<sub>1-7</sub> alkyl group, a C<sub>3-20</sub> heterocyclyl group, or a C<sub>5-20</sub>  
aryl group, preferably a C<sub>1-7</sub> alkyl group. Examples of sulfonamino  
groups include, but are not limited to, -NHS(=O)<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub> and  
-N(CH<sub>3</sub>)S(=O)<sub>2</sub>C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub>.

25 Sulfinamino: -NR<sup>1</sup>S(=O)R, wherein R<sup>1</sup> is an amino substituent, as  
defined for amino groups, and R is a sulfinamino substituent, for  
example, a C<sub>1-7</sub> alkyl group, a C<sub>3-20</sub> heterocyclyl group, or a C<sub>5-20</sub>  
aryl group, preferably a C<sub>1-7</sub> alkyl group. Examples of sulfinamino  
30 groups include, but are not limited to, -NHS(=O)CH<sub>3</sub> and  
-N(CH<sub>3</sub>)S(=O)C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub>.

35 Phosphino (phosphine): -PR<sub>2</sub>, wherein R is a phosphino substituent,  
for example, -H, a C<sub>1-7</sub> alkyl group, a C<sub>3-20</sub> heterocyclyl group, or a  
C<sub>5-20</sub> aryl group, preferably -H, a C<sub>1-7</sub> alkyl group, or a C<sub>5-20</sub> aryl

group. Examples of phosphino groups include, but are not limited to,  $-PH_2$ ,  $-P(CH_3)_2$ ,  $-P(CH_2CH_3)_2$ ,  $-P(t-Bu)_2$ , and  $-P(Ph)_2$ .

Phospho:  $-P(=O)_2$ .

5 Phosphinyl (phosphine oxide):  $-P(=O)R_2$ , wherein R is a phosphinyl substituent, for example, a C<sub>1-7</sub> alkyl group, a C<sub>3-20</sub> heterocyclyl group, or a C<sub>5-20</sub> aryl group, preferably a C<sub>1-7</sub> alkyl group or a C<sub>5-20</sub> aryl group. Examples of phosphinyl groups include, but are not limited to,  $-P(=O)(CH_3)_2$ ,  $-P(=O)(CH_2CH_3)_2$ ,  $-P(=O)(t-Bu)_2$ , and  $-P(=O)(Ph)_2$ .

10 Phosphonic acid (phosphono):  $-P(=O)(OH)_2$ .

15 Phosphonate (phosphono ester):  $-P(=O)(OR)_2$ , where R is a phosphonate substituent, for example, -H, a C<sub>1-7</sub> alkyl group, a C<sub>3-20</sub> heterocyclyl group, or a C<sub>5-20</sub> aryl group, preferably -H, a C<sub>1-7</sub> alkyl group, or a C<sub>5-20</sub> aryl group. Examples of phosphonate groups include, but are not limited to,  $-P(=O)(OCH_3)_2$ ,  $-P(=O)(OCH_2CH_3)_2$ ,  $-P(=O)(O-t-Bu)_2$ , and  $-P(=O)(OPh)_2$ .

20 Phosphoric acid (phosphonoxy):  $-OP(=O)(OH)_2$ .

25 Phosphate (phosphonoxy ester):  $-OP(=O)(OR)_2$ , where R is a phosphate substituent, for example, -H, a C<sub>1-7</sub> alkyl group, a C<sub>3-20</sub> heterocyclyl group, or a C<sub>5-20</sub> aryl group, preferably -H, a C<sub>1-7</sub> alkyl group, or a C<sub>5-20</sub> aryl group. Examples of phosphate groups include, but are not limited to,  $-OP(=O)(OCH_3)_2$ ,  $-OP(=O)(OCH_2CH_3)_2$ ,  $-OP(=O)(O-t-Bu)_2$ , and  $-OP(=O)(OPh)_2$ .

30 Phosphorous acid:  $-OP(OH)_2$ .

35 Phosphite:  $-OP(OR)_2$ , where R is a phosphite substituent, for example, -H, a C<sub>1-7</sub> alkyl group, a C<sub>3-20</sub> heterocyclyl group, or a C<sub>5-20</sub> aryl group, preferably -H, a C<sub>1-7</sub> alkyl group, or a C<sub>5-20</sub> aryl group.

Examples of phosphite groups include, but are not limited to, -OP(OCH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>, -OP(OCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>, -OP(O-t-Bu)<sub>2</sub>, and -OP(OPh)<sub>2</sub>.

Phosphoramidite: -OP(OR<sup>1</sup>)-NR<sup>2</sup><sub>2</sub>, where R<sup>1</sup> and R<sup>2</sup> are phosphoramidite substituents, for example, -H, a (optionally substituted) C<sub>1-7</sub> alkyl group, a C<sub>3-20</sub> heterocyclyl group, or a C<sub>5-20</sub> aryl group, preferably -H, a C<sub>1-7</sub> alkyl group, or a C<sub>5-20</sub> aryl group. Examples of phosphoramidite groups include, but are not limited to, -OP(OCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>)-N(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>, -OP(OCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>)-N(i-Pr)<sub>2</sub>, and -OP(OCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CN)-N(i-Pr)<sub>2</sub>.

Phosphoramide: -OP(=O)(OR<sup>1</sup>)-NR<sup>2</sup><sub>2</sub>, where R<sup>1</sup> and R<sup>2</sup> are phosphoramide substituents, for example, -H, a (optionally substituted) C<sub>1-7</sub> alkyl group, a C<sub>3-20</sub> heterocyclyl group, or a C<sub>5-20</sub> aryl group, preferably -H, a C<sub>1-7</sub> alkyl group, or a C<sub>5-20</sub> aryl group. Examples of phosphoramide groups include, but are not limited to, -OP(=O)(OCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>)-N(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>, -OP(=O)(OCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>)-N(i-Pr)<sub>2</sub>, and -OP(=O)(OCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CN)-N(i-Pr)<sub>2</sub>.

#### Alkylene

C<sub>3-12</sub> alkylene: The term "C<sub>3-12</sub> alkylene", as used herein, pertains to a bidentate moiety obtained by removing two hydrogen atoms, either both from the same carbon atom, or one from each of two different carbon atoms, of a hydrocarbon compound having from 3 to 12 carbon atoms (unless otherwise specified), which may be aliphatic or alicyclic, and which may be saturated, partially unsaturated, or fully unsaturated. Thus, the term "alkylene" includes the sub-classes alkenylene, alkynylene, cycloalkylene, etc., discussed below.

Examples of linear saturated C<sub>3-12</sub> alkylene groups include, but are not limited to, -(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>- where n is an integer from 3 to 12, for example, -CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>- (propylene), -CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>- (butylene), -CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>- (pentylene) and -CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>- (heptylene).

Examples of branched saturated C<sub>3-12</sub> alkylene groups include, but are not limited to, -CH(CH<sub>3</sub>)CH<sub>2</sub>-, -CH(CH<sub>3</sub>)CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>-, -CH(CH<sub>3</sub>)CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>-, -CH<sub>2</sub>CH(CH<sub>3</sub>)CH<sub>2</sub>-, -CH<sub>2</sub>CH(CH<sub>3</sub>)CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>-, -CH(CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>)-, -CH(CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>)CH<sub>2</sub>-, and -CH<sub>2</sub>CH(CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>)CH<sub>2</sub>-.

5

Examples of linear partially unsaturated C<sub>3-12</sub> alkylene groups (C<sub>3-12</sub> alkenylene, and alkynylene groups) include, but are not limited to, -CH=CH-CH<sub>2</sub>-, -CH<sub>2</sub>-CH=CH<sub>2</sub>-, -CH=CH-CH<sub>2</sub>-CH<sub>2</sub>-, -CH=CH-CH<sub>2</sub>-CH<sub>2</sub>-CH<sub>2</sub>-, -CH=CH-CH=CH-, -CH=CH-CH=CH-CH<sub>2</sub>-, -CH=CH-CH=CH-CH<sub>2</sub>-CH<sub>2</sub>-, -CH=CH-CH=CH-, -CH=CH-CH<sub>2</sub>-CH=CH-, and -CH<sub>2</sub>-C≡C-CH<sub>2</sub>-.

10

Examples of branched partially unsaturated C<sub>3-12</sub> alkylene groups (C<sub>3-12</sub> alkenylene and alkynylene groups) include, but are not limited to, -C(CH<sub>3</sub>)=CH-, -C(CH<sub>3</sub>)=CH-CH<sub>2</sub>-, -CH=CH-CH(CH<sub>3</sub>)- and -C≡C-CH(CH<sub>3</sub>)-.

15

Examples of alicyclic saturated C<sub>3-12</sub> alkylene groups (C<sub>3-12</sub> cycloalkynes) include, but are not limited to, cyclopentylene (e.g. cyclopent-1,3-ylene), and cyclohexylene (e.g. cyclohex-1,4-ylene).

20

Examples of alicyclic partially unsaturated C<sub>3-12</sub> alkylene groups (C<sub>3-12</sub> cycloalkynes) include, but are not limited to, cyclopentenylene (e.g. 4-cyclopenten-1,3-ylene), cyclohexenylene (e.g. 2-cyclohexen-1,4-ylene; 3-cyclohexen-1,2-ylene; 2,5-cyclohexadien-1,4-ylene).

25

#### Proliferative Diseases

One of ordinary skill in the art is readily able to determine whether or not a candidate compound treats a proliferative condition for any particular cell type. For example, assays which may conveniently be used to assess the activity offered by a particular compound are described in the examples below.

The term "proliferative disease" pertains to an unwanted or uncontrolled cellular proliferation of excessive or abnormal cells

35

which is undesired, such as, neoplastic or hyperplastic growth, whether *in vitro* or *in vivo*.

Examples of proliferative conditions include, but are not limited to, benign, pre-malignant, and malignant cellular proliferation, including but not limited to, neoplasms and tumours (e.g. histocytoma, glioma, astrocytoma, osteoma), cancers (e.g. lung cancer, small cell lung cancer, gastrointestinal cancer, bowel cancer, colon cancer, breast carcinoma, ovarian carcinoma, prostate cancer, testicular cancer, liver cancer, kidney cancer, bladder cancer, pancreas cancer, brain cancer, sarcoma, osteosarcoma, Kaposi's sarcoma, melanoma), leukemias, psoriasis, bone diseases, fibroproliferative disorders (e.g. of connective tissues), and atherosclerosis.

Any type of cell may be treated, including but not limited to, lung, gastrointestinal (including, e.g. bowel, colon), breast (mammary), ovarian, prostate, liver (hepatic), kidney (renal), bladder, pancreas, brain, and skin.

Methods of Treatment  
As described above, the present invention provide the use of a compound of formula **IIIa** or **IIIb** in a method of therapy. Also provided is a method of treatment, comprising administering to a subject in need of treatment a therapeutically-effective amount of a compound of formula **IIIa** or **IIIb**, preferably in the form of a pharmaceutical composition, which is the third aspect of the present invention. The term "therapeutically effective amount" is an amount sufficient to show benefit to a patient. Such benefit may be at least amelioration of at least one symptom. The actual amount administered, and rate and time-course of administration, will depend on the nature and severity of what is being treated. Prescription of treatment, e.g. decisions on dosage, is within the responsibility of general practitioners and other medical doctors.

A compound may be administered alone or in combination with other treatments, either simultaneously or sequentially dependent upon the condition to be treated. Examples of treatments and therapies include, but are not limited to, chemotherapy (the administration of active agents, including, e.g. drugs; surgery; and radiation therapy. If the compound of formula **IIIa** or **IIIb** bears a carbamate-based nitrogen protecting group which may be removed *in vivo*, then the methods of treatment described in WO 00/12507 (ADEPT, GDEPT and PDT) may be used.

10

Pharmaceutical compositions according to the present invention, and for use in accordance with the present invention, may comprise, in addition to the active ingredient, i.e. a compound of formula **IIIa** or **IIIb**, a pharmaceutically acceptable excipient, carrier, buffer, stabiliser or other materials well known to those skilled in the art. Such materials should be non-toxic and should not interfere with the efficacy of the active ingredient. The precise nature of the carrier or other material will depend on the route of administration, which may be oral, or by injection, e.g. cutaneous, subcutaneous, or intravenous.

Pharmaceutical compositions for oral administration may be in tablet, capsule, powder or liquid form. A tablet may comprise a solid carrier or an adjuvant. Liquid pharmaceutical compositions generally comprise a liquid carrier such as water, petroleum, animal or vegetable oils, mineral oil or synthetic oil. Physiological saline solution, dextrose or other saccharide solution or glycols such as ethylene glycol, propylene glycol or polyethylene glycol may be included. A capsule may comprise a solid carrier such a gelatin.

For intravenous, cutaneous or subcutaneous injection, or injection at the site of affliction, the active ingredient will be in the form of a parenterally acceptable aqueous solution which is pyrogen-free and has suitable pH, isotonicity and stability. Those of relevant skill in the art are well able to prepare

suitable solutions using, for example, isotonic vehicles such as Sodium Chloride Injection, Ringer's Injection, Lactated Ringer's Injection. Preservatives, stabilisers, buffers, antioxidants and/or other additives may be included, as required.

5

Includes Other Forms

Unless otherwise specified, included in the above are the well known ionic, salt, solvate, and protected forms of these substituents. For example, a reference to carboxylic acid (-COOH) also includes the anionic (carboxylate) form (-COO<sup>-</sup>), a salt or solvate thereof, as well as conventional protected forms.

10

Similarly, a reference to an amino group includes the protonated form (-N<sup>+</sup>HR<sup>1</sup>R<sup>2</sup>), a salt or solvate of the amino group, for example, a hydrochloride salt, as well as conventional protected forms of an amino group. Similarly, a reference to a hydroxyl group also includes the anionic form (-O<sup>-</sup>), a salt or solvate thereof, as well as conventional protected forms.

15

Isomers, Salts and Solvates

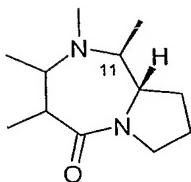
20

Certain compounds may exist in one or more particular geometric, optical, enantiomeric, diastereomeric, epimeric, atropic, stereoisomeric, tautomeric, conformational, or anomeric forms, including but not limited to, cis- and trans-forms; E- and Z-forms; c-, t-, and r- forms; endo- and exo-forms; R-, S-, and meso-forms; D- and L-forms; d- and l-forms; (+) and (-) forms; keto-, enol-, and enolate-forms; syn- and anti-forms; synclinal- and anticinal-forms; α- and β-forms; axial and equatorial forms; boat-, chair-, twist-, envelope-, and halfchair-forms; and combinations thereof, hereinafter collectively referred to as "isomers" (or "isomeric forms").

25

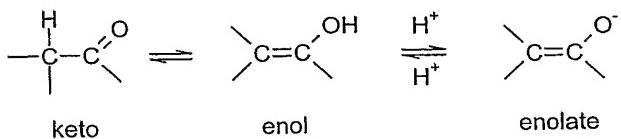
30

Preferably compounds of the present invention have the following stereochemistry at the C11 position:



Note that, except as discussed below for tautomeric forms, specifically excluded from the term "isomers", as used herein, are structural (or constitutional) isomers (i.e. isomers which differ in the connections between atoms rather than merely by the position of atoms in space). For example, a reference to a methoxy group, -OCH<sub>3</sub>, is not to be construed as a reference to its structural isomer, a hydroxymethyl group, -CH<sub>2</sub>OH. Similarly, a reference to ortho-chlorophenyl is not to be construed as a reference to its structural isomer, meta-chlorophenyl. However, a reference to a class of structures may well include structurally isomeric forms falling within that class (e.g. C<sub>1-7</sub> alkyl includes n-propyl and iso-propyl; butyl includes n-, iso-, sec-, and tert-butyl; methoxyphenyl includes ortho-, meta-, and para-methoxyphenyl).

The above exclusion does not pertain to tautomeric forms, for example, keto-, enol-, and enolate-forms, as in, for example, the following tautomeric pairs: keto/enol (illustrated below), imine/enamine, amide/imino alcohol, amidine/amidine, nitroso/oxime, thioketone/enethiol, N-nitroso/hydroxyazo, and nitro/aci-nitro.



Note that specifically included in the term "isomer" are compounds with one or more isotopic substitutions. For example, H may be in any isotopic form, including <sup>1</sup>H, <sup>2</sup>H (D), and <sup>3</sup>H (T); C may be in any isotopic form, including <sup>12</sup>C, <sup>13</sup>C, and <sup>14</sup>C; O may be in any isotopic form, including <sup>16</sup>O and <sup>18</sup>O; and the like.

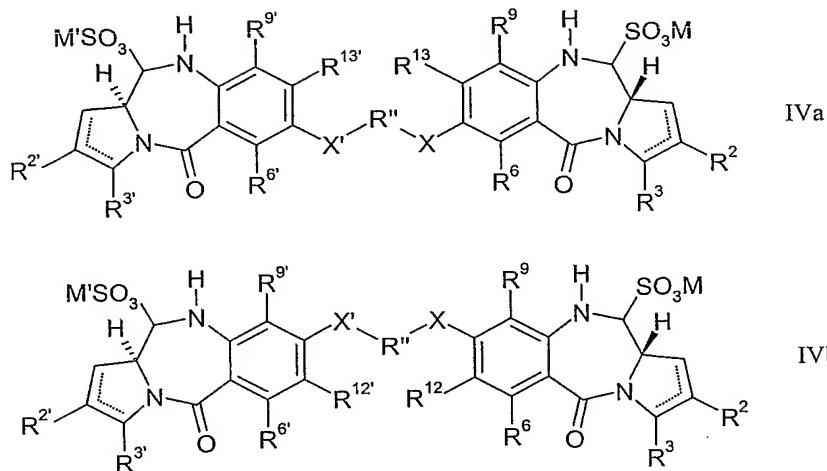
- Unless otherwise specified, a reference to a particular compound includes all such isomeric forms, including (wholly or partially) racemic and other mixtures thereof. Methods for the preparation (e.g. asymmetric synthesis) and separation (e.g. fractional crystallisation and chromatographic means) of such isomeric forms are either known in the art or are readily obtained by adapting the methods taught herein, or known methods, in a known manner.
- Unless otherwise specified, a reference to a particular compound also includes ionic, salt, solvate, and protected forms of thereof, for example, as discussed below.
- It may be convenient or desirable to prepare, purify, and/or handle a corresponding salt of the active compound, for example, a pharmaceutically-acceptable salt. Examples of pharmaceutically acceptable salts are discussed in Berge, et al., *J. Pharm. Sci.*, **66**, 1-19 (1977).
- For example, if the compound is anionic, or has a functional group which may be anionic (e.g. -COOH may be -COO<sup>-</sup>), then a salt may be formed with a suitable cation. Examples of suitable inorganic cations include, but are not limited to, alkali metal ions such as Na<sup>+</sup> and K<sup>+</sup>, alkaline earth cations such as Ca<sup>2+</sup> and Mg<sup>2+</sup>, and other cations such as Al<sup>3+</sup>. Examples of suitable organic cations include, but are not limited to, ammonium ion (i.e. NH<sub>4</sub><sup>+</sup>) and substituted ammonium ions (e.g. NH<sub>3</sub>R<sup>+</sup>, NH<sub>2</sub>R<sub>2</sub><sup>+</sup>, NHR<sub>3</sub><sup>+</sup>, NR<sub>4</sub><sup>+</sup>). Examples of some suitable substituted ammonium ions are those derived from: ethylamine, diethylamine, dicyclohexylamine, triethylamine, butylamine, ethylenediamine, ethanolamine, diethanolamine, piperazine, benzylamine, phenylbenzylamine, choline, meglumine, and tromethamine, as well as amino acids, such as lysine and arginine. An example of a common quaternary ammonium ion is N(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>4</sub><sup>+</sup>.

If the compound is cationic, or has a functional group which may be cationic (e.g. -NH<sub>2</sub> may be -NH<sub>3</sub><sup>+</sup>), then a salt may be formed with a suitable anion. Examples of suitable inorganic anions include, but are not limited to, those derived from the following inorganic acids: hydrochloric, hydrobromic, hydroiodic, sulfuric, 5 sulfurous, nitric, nitrous, phosphoric, and phosphorous.

Examples of suitable organic anions include, but are not limited to, those derived from the following organic acids:

10 2-acetyoxybenzoic, acetic, ascorbic, aspartic, benzoic, camphorsulfonic, cinnamic, citric, edetic, ethanesulfonic, ethanesulfonic, fumaric, glutheptonic, gluconic, glutamic, glycolic, hydroxymaleic, hydroxynaphthalene carboxylic, isethionic, lactic, lactobionic, lauric, maleic, malic, 15 methanesulfonic, mucic, oleic, oxalic, palmitic, pamoic, pantothenic, phenylacetic, phenylsulfonic, propionic, pyruvic, salicylic, stearic, succinic, sulfanilic, tartaric, toluenesulfonic, and valeric. Examples of suitable polymeric organic anions include, but are not limited to, those derived from 20 the following polymeric acids: tannic acid, carboxymethyl cellulose.

A particular salt form of interest can be formed from compounds of formula **IIIa** and **IIIb**, where R<sup>10</sup> and R<sup>15</sup> form an imine bond, by reacting said compound with a bisulphite salt to form a bisulphite derivative of the PBD. These compounds can be represented as:



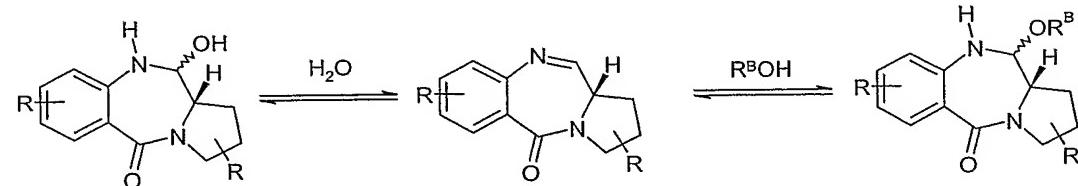
where M and M' are independently monovalent pharmaceutically acceptable cations, or together form a divalent pharmaceutically acceptable cation, and the other groups are as previously defined.

5

It may be convenient or desirable to prepare, purify, and/or handle a corresponding solvate of the active compound. The term "solvate" is used herein in the conventional sense to refer to a complex of solute (e.g. active compound, salt of active compound) and solvent. If the solvent is water, the solvate may be conveniently referred to as a hydrate, for example, a mono-hydrate, a di-hydrate, a tri-hydrate, etc.

10

Solvates of particular relevance to the present invention are those where the solvent adds across the imine bond of the PBD moiety, which is illustrated below where the solvent is water or an alcohol ( $R^B\text{OH}$ , where  $R^B$  is an ether substituent as described above) :



20

These forms can be called the carbinolamine and carbinolamine ether forms of the PBD. The balance of these equilibria depend on

the conditions in which the compounds are found, as well as the nature of the moiety itself.

In general any nucleophilic solvent is capable of forming such solvates as illustrated above for hydroxylic solvents. Other nucleophilic solvents include thiols and amines.

These solvates may be isolated in solid form, for example, by lyophilisation.

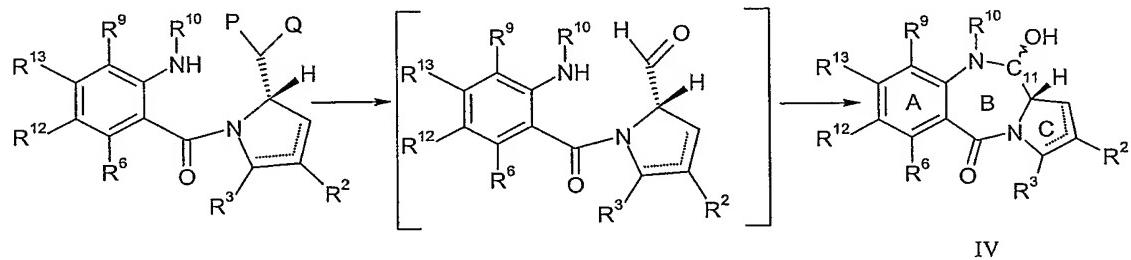
10

#### General synthetic routes

The synthesis of PBD compounds is extensively discussed in WO 00/12508, which discussion is incorporated herein by reference.

15

As discussed in that patent application, a key step in a preferred route to PBDs is a cyclisation to produce the B-ring, involving generation of an aldehyde (or functional equivalent thereof) at what will be the 11-position, and attack thereon by the Pro-N10-nitrogen:

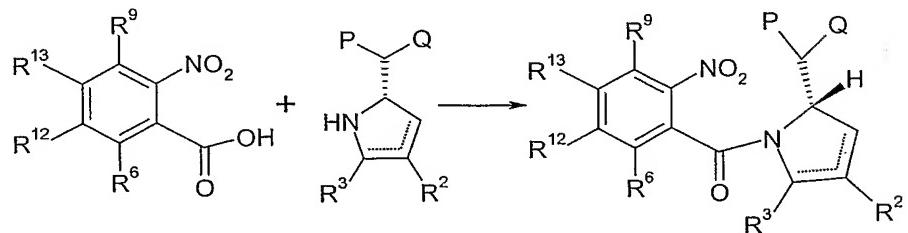


20

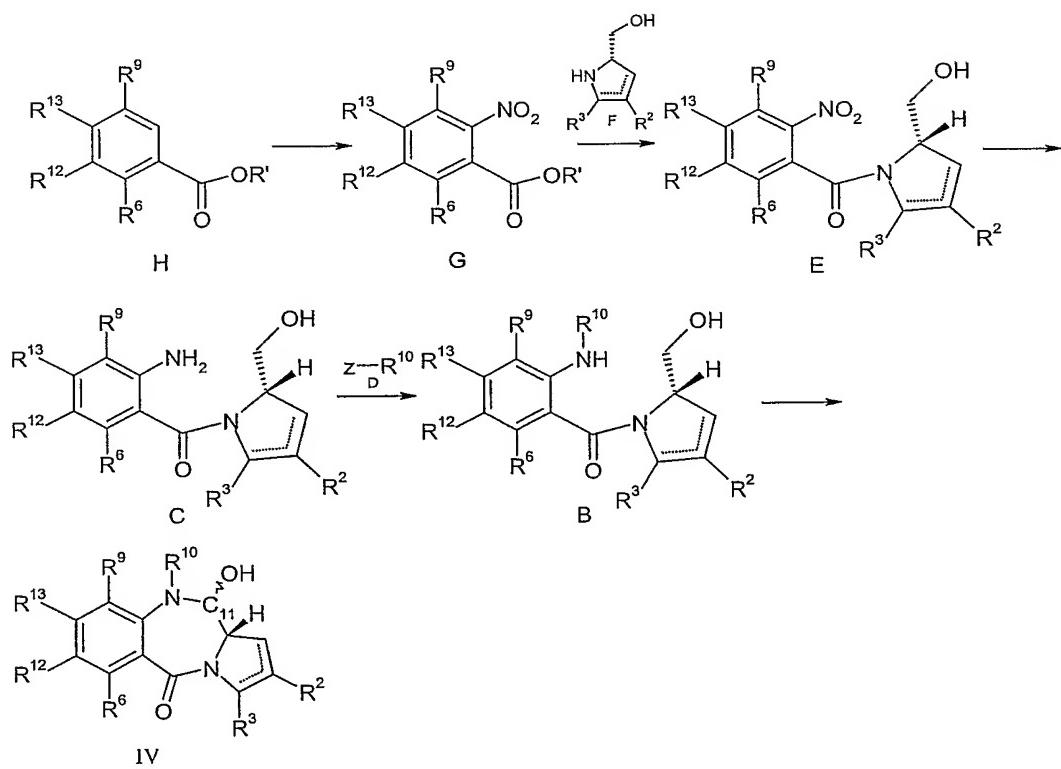
wherein the substituents are as defined in the second aspect of the invention and R<sup>12</sup> and R<sup>13</sup> are either OR<sup>14</sup> and R<sup>A</sup> respectively or R<sup>A</sup> and OR<sup>14</sup> respectively i.e. the protected hydroxyl group may be at either the C7 or C8 position with the other position being R<sup>A</sup>. The "masked aldehyde" -CPQ may be an acetal or thioacetal, in which case the cyclisation involves unmasking. Alternatively, it may be an alcohol -CHOH, in which case the reaction involves oxidation, e.g. by means of TPAP, TEMPO or DMSO (Swern oxidation).

25

The masked aldehyde compound can be produced by condensing a corresponding 2,4-substituted pyrrolidine with a 2-nitrobenzoic acid:



- 5      The nitro group can then be reduced to  $-NH_2$  and protected by reaction with a suitable agent, e.g. a chloroformate, which provides the removable nitrogen protecting group in the compound of formula **IV**.
- 10     A process involving the oxidation-cyclization procedure is illustrated in scheme 1 (an alternative type of cyclisation will be described later with reference to scheme 2).



*Scheme 1*

Exposure of the alcohol (B) (in which the Pro-N10-nitrogen is generally protected as carbamate) to tetrapropylammonium perruthenate (TPAP)/N-methylmorpholine N-oxide (NMO) over A4 sieves results in oxidation accompanied by spontaneous B-ring closure to afford the desired product IV. The TPAP/NMO oxidation procedure is found to be particularly convenient for small scale reactions while the use of DMSO-based oxidation methods, particularly Swern oxidation, proves superior for larger scale work (e.g. > 1 g). A particularly preferred oxidising agent is (diacetoxyiodo)benzene (1.1 eq) and TEMPO (0.1 eq) dissolved in CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>.

The uncyclized alcohol (B) may be prepared by the reaction of a nitrogen protection reagent of formula D, which is preferably a chloroformate or acid chloride, to a solution of the amino alcohol C, generally in solution, generally in the presence of a base such as pyridine (preferably 2 equivalents) at a moderate temperature (e.g. at 0°C). Under these conditions little or no O-acylation is usually observed.

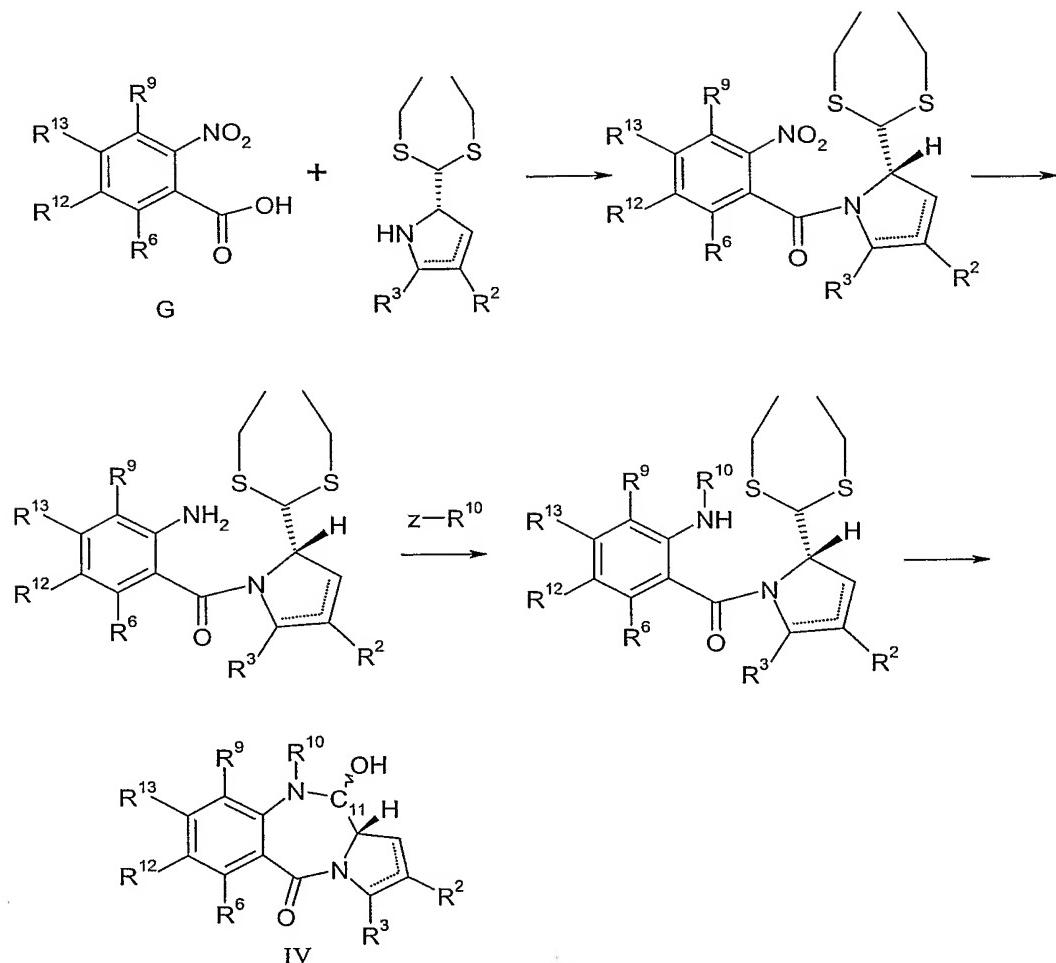
The key amino alcohol C may be prepared by reduction of the corresponding nitro compound E, by choosing a method which will leave the rest of the molecule intact. Treatment of E with tin (II) chloride in a suitable solvent, e.g. refluxing methanol, generally affords, after the removal of the tin salts, the desired product in high yield.

Exposure of E to hydrazine/Raney nickel avoids the production of tin salts and may result in a higher yield of C, although this method is less compatible with the range of possible C and A-ring substituents. For instance, if there is C-ring unsaturation (either in the ring itself, or in R<sub>2</sub> or R<sub>3</sub>), this technique may be unsuitable.

The nitro compound of formula E may be prepared by coupling the appropriate *o*-nitrobenzoyl chloride to a compound of formula F, e.g. in the presence of  $K_2CO_3$  at  $-25^{\circ}C$  under a  $N_2$  atmosphere. Compounds of formula F can be readily prepared, for example by olefination of the ketone derived from L-trans-hydroxy proline. The ketone intermediate can also be exploited by conversion to the enol triflate for use in palladium mediated coupling reactions.

The *o*-nitrobenzoyl chloride is synthesised from the *o*-nitrobenzoic acid (or alkyl ester after hydrolysis) of formula G, which itself is prepared from the vanilllic acid (or alkyl ester) derivative H. Many of these are commercially available and some are disclosed in Althuis, T.H. and Hess, H.J., *J. Medicinal Chem.*, 20(1), 146-266 (1977).

## Alternative Cyclisation (Scheme 2)



- 5 In scheme 1, the final or penultimate step was an oxidative cyclisation. An alternative, using thioacetal coupling, is shown in scheme 2. Mercury-mediated unmasking causes cyclisation to the protected PBD compound IV.
- 10 The thioacetal compound may be prepared as shown in scheme 2: the thioacetal protected C-ring [prepared via a literature method: Langley, D.R. & Thurston, D.E., *J. Organic Chemistry*, 52, 91-97 (1987)] is coupled to the o-nitrobenzoic acid (or alkyl ester after hydrolysis) (G) using a literature procedure. The resulting 15 nitro compound cannot be reduced by hydrogenation, because of the

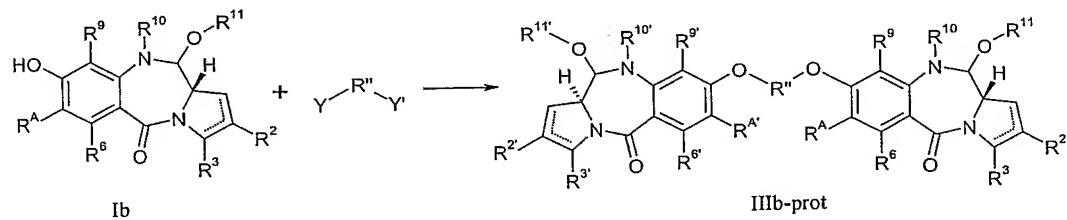
thioacetal group, so the tin(II) chloride method is used to afford the amine. This is then N-protected, e.g., by reaction with a chloroformate or acid chloride, such as 2,2,2-trichloroethylchloroformate.

5                   Acetal-containing C-rings can be used as an alternative in this type of route with deprotection involving other methods, including the use of acidic conditions.

10                  *Alternative routes to PBDs*

Alternative methods of synthesising N<sup>10</sup> protected PBDs are disclosed in co-pending application PCT/GB2004/003873 (filed 10 September 2004) which claims priority from GB0321295.8 (filed 11 September 2003), which describes the use of isocyanate intermediates.

15                  *Formation of compounds IIIa and IIIb (Scheme 3)*



Scheme 3

20                  Formation of the protected compound IIIb dimer from compound Ib is illustrated, however, protected compound IIIa is formed in an analogous manner with compound Ia as the starting material.

25                  The PBD dimer compound IIIa or IIIb may be synthesized by dimerisation of compounds of formula Ia or Ib respectively following deprotection of the OH group at either the C7 or C8 position. The synthesis route illustrated in scheme 3 shows compounds when the dimer linkage is of the formula -O-(CH<sub>n</sub>)-O-.

The protected dimer **IIIA** or **IIIB** may be formed from compounds of formula **Ia** or **Ib** respectively through reaction with a disubstituted linking chain. The linking chain is preferably of the general form Y-R"-Y' where R" is as previously defined and Y and Y' are groups which can be reacted with an alcohol to form an ether linkage. Y and Y' are preferably independently selected from I, Br, Cl, OH, mesylate or tosylate. In a preferred aspect, Y and Y' are the same. In a preferred aspect Y and Y' are both iodo- groups.

10

Where Y and/or Y' is I, Br, Cl, mesylate or tosylate, the Y-R"-Y' reactant is coupled to the compound of formula **Ia** or **Ib** by a simple elimination reaction with Y and Y' as leaving groups. For example where the linking chain is -O-CH<sub>2</sub>-CH<sub>2</sub>-CH<sub>2</sub>-O-, the compound of formula **Ia** or **Ib** is reacted with 1,3-diiodopropane in the presence of K<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub>. Generally, where the linking chain is a straight chain alkyl ether of the form -O-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>-O-, the compound of formula **Ia** or **Ib** is preferably reacted with the corresponding 1,n-diiodoalkane.

15

Where Y and/or Y' is OH, the Y-R"-Y' reactant is coupled to the compound of formula **Ia** or **Ib** under Mitsunobu conditions.

20

It is important that the OH protecting group at C11 in formula **Ia** or **Ib** is orthogonal to the OH protecting group at C7 and/or C8. This allows the C7 and/or C8 protection to be removed to give the free alcohol to allow dimerisation whilst the C11 OH group remains protected and therefore unreactive under the dimerisation conditions.

25

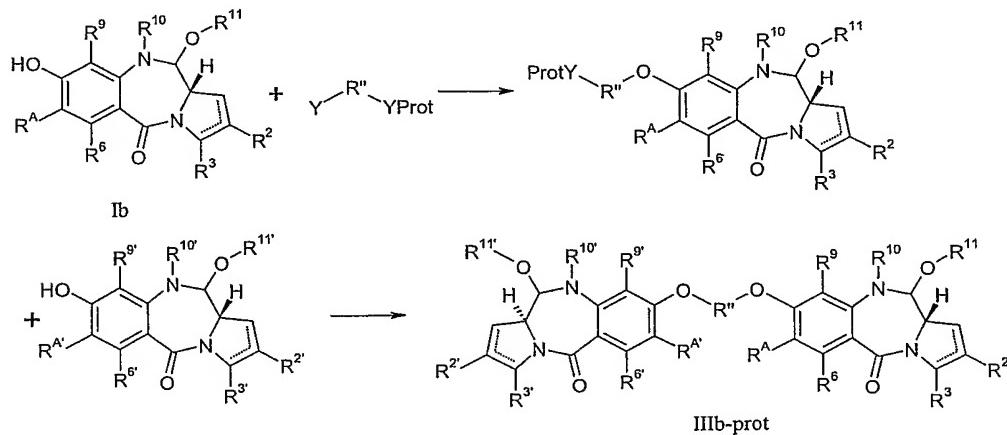
Following dimerisation, the imine bond in the compound of formula **IIIB-prot** can be deprotected by standard methods to yield the unprotected compound **IIIB** (which may be in its carbinolamine or carboinolamine ether form, depending on the solvents used). For example if R<sup>10</sup> is Alloc, then the deprotection is carried using palladium to remove the N10 protecting group, followed by the

elimination of water. If  $R^{10}$  is Troc, then the deprotection is carried out using a Cd/Pb couple to yield the compound of formula IIIb.

5 Compound IIIa may be formed in an analogous manner via deprotection of the protected imine.

If the nitrogen protecting group ( $R^{10}$ ) is such that the desired end product still contains it, e.g. if it is removable *in vivo*, then 10 the C11 deprotected forms of compounds of formula IIIa or IIIb may be synthesised by removal of the oxygen protecting groups under suitable conditions to leave the  $R^{10}$  group in unaffected.

The above described methods are suited to the synthesis of dimers 15 where both the PBD monomers have the same substituent pattern. One method of synthesising a dimer where the substituent pattern of the two PBD monomers is not the same involves protecting one end of the compound  $Y-R''-Y'$  (or using an already protected compound), coupling a PBD monomer to the unprotected end, 20 deprotecting the other end and coupling a different PBD monomer to the free end. This route is shown in scheme 4.



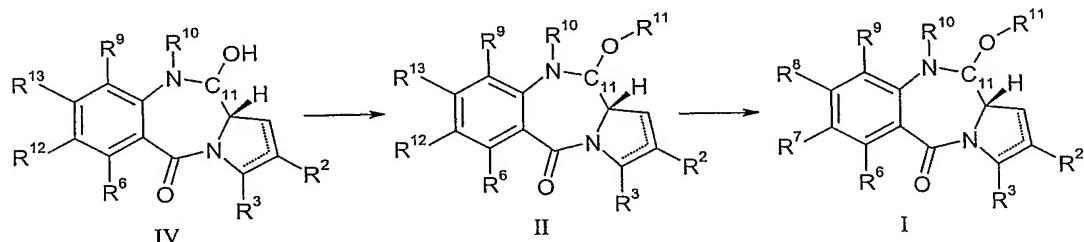
*Scheme 4*

25 Where  $YProt$ , is a protected version, or precursor to  $Y'$ . If  $Y'$  is protected then the protecting group used should be orthogonal to those on the rest of the molecule, in particular,  $R^{10}$  and  $R^{11}$ . One

example of this route, would be to have Y as -OH and YProt as -O-benzyl. The first monomer could be joined by Mitsunobu coupling, the benzyl hydroxy deprotected, and then the free hydroxy coupled to the second monomer by a further Mitsunobu reaction.

5

### *Formation of Compound of formula Ia or Ib*



Following cyclisation to form the B-ring, the C11-alcohol **IV** is then preferably protected, by conventional means to provide **II**.  
 10 For example, if R<sup>11</sup> is THP, the protection can take place by reacting **IV** with dihydropyran (DHP) and catalytic *p*-toluene sulfonic acid. Cleavage of the C7 or C8-protecting group from **II** then provides the corresponding C7 or C8 alcohol. For example, where the C7 or C8 protecting group (R<sup>12</sup> or R<sup>13</sup>) is a benzyl ether, this deprotection may be performed by reaction with H<sub>2</sub> catalysed by palladium on carbon.  
 15

This protection at the C11 position and deprotection of the C7 or C8 alcohol allows subsequent reaction of selectively the C7 or C8 alcohol position, for example to form the dimer compound **IIIa** or **IIIb** leaving the C11 position unaffected.

## Further Preferences

The following preferences may apply to all aspects of the invention as described above, or may relate to a single aspect. The preferences may be combined together in any combination.

$R^9$  is preferably H.

30 R<sup>2</sup> is preferably R, and is more preferably an optionally substituted C<sub>5-20</sub> aryl group. Most preferred is an optionally

substituted phenyl group.

R<sup>6</sup> is preferably selected from H, OH, OR, SH, NH<sub>2</sub>, nitro and halo, and is more preferably H or halo, and most preferably is H.

5

R<sup>A</sup> is preferably independently selected from H, OR, SH, SR, NH<sub>2</sub>, NHR, NRR', and halo, and more preferably independently selected from H and OR, where R is preferably selected from optionally substituted C<sub>1-7</sub> alkyl, C<sub>3-10</sub> heterocyclyl and C<sub>5-10</sub> aryl groups.

10

In the first aspect of the invention, R<sup>10</sup> is preferably BOC or Troc. R<sup>11</sup> is preferably THP or a silyl oxygen protecting group (for example TBS) and R<sup>A</sup> is preferably selected from OMe and H. In a most preferred first aspect of the invention, R<sup>10</sup> is BOC, R<sup>11</sup> is THP and R<sup>A</sup> is OMe.

15

In the second aspect of the invention, at least one of R<sup>14</sup> is preferably a benzyl ether and R<sup>A</sup> is preferably OMe or H. R<sup>11</sup> is preferably THP or a silyl oxygen protecting group (for example TBS). Accordingly, in a particularly preferred embodiment of the second aspect of the invention R<sup>A</sup> is OMe and R<sup>11</sup> is THP or TBS. Furthermore, R<sup>10</sup> is preferably BOC.

20

In some embodiments of the third aspect of the invention, R<sup>10</sup> is preferably BOC and R<sup>15</sup> is O-R<sup>11</sup>, wherein R<sup>11</sup> is preferably THP or a silyl oxygen protecting group (for example TBS).

25

In other embodiments of the third aspect of the invention, R<sup>10</sup> and R<sup>15</sup> together form a double bond between N10 and C11.

30

In some aspects of the third embodiment of the invention, the two PBD monomer units are linked at the C7 and C7' positions. In other aspects of the third embodiment of the invention, the two PBD monomer units are linked at the C8 and C8' positions.

35

In preferred aspects of the third embodiment of the invention, the substituent groups on C7, C8, N10 and C11 are the same on each monomer unit that makes up the dimers of the third aspect of the invention. It is further preferred that the substituent groups on all positions of each monomer unit that make up the dimer are the same.

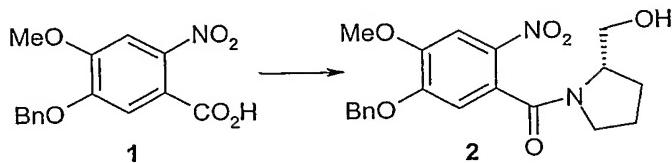
Novel compounds of the present invention preferably have R<sup>10</sup> and R<sup>15</sup>  
 forming a double bond between N10 and C11. Preferably, the novel  
 compounds of the invention are dimers through C7 or C8, i.e. the R<sup>7</sup>  
 or R<sup>8</sup> groups of each monomer form together a dimer bridge having  
 the formula -X-R"-X- linking the monomers. More preferably, the  
 dimer bridge is of formula -O-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>-O-, where n is 3 to 12, more  
 preferably for the dimers linked at the C8 position, n is 7 to 12,  
 more preferably n is 7 to 11 and even more preferably n is 7, 9 or  
 11; for the dimer linked at the C7 position, n is preferably 3 to  
 12, more preferably 3, 5, or 7. The preferences for R<sup>6</sup>, R<sup>7</sup> and R<sup>9</sup>  
 are as expressed above. Preferably, R<sup>12</sup> and R<sup>13</sup> are independently  
 selected from H, OH, OR, SH, NH<sub>2</sub>, nitro and halo. More preferably  
 R<sup>12</sup> and R<sup>13</sup> are independently selected from H, OH and OR. Most  
 preferred is R<sup>12</sup> and R<sup>13</sup> as OMe.

If R is optionally substituted C<sub>1-12</sub> alkyl, it is preferred that it is optionally substituted C<sub>1-7</sub> alkyl.

25

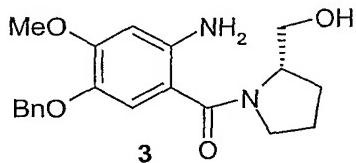
**Example 1 - Synthesis of PBD monomer - (11*S*,11*aS*)-10-(tert-Butyloxycarbonyl)-7-hydroxy-8-methoxy-11-(tetrahydroxy-pyran-2-yloxy)-1,2,3,10,11,11*a*-hexahydro-5*H*-pyrrolo[2,1-*c*][1,4]benzodiazepine-5-one (7)**

(a) *(5-Benzylxy-4-methoxy-2-nitrobenzoyl)-pyrrolidine-2-methanol*  
(2)



1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide (EDCI) (6.33 g, 33.0 mmol, 1.0 equiv) was added to a stirred solution of the acid 1 (10 g, 33.0 mol, 1.0 equiv) in anhydrous DCM (300 mL) under a nitrogen atmosphere at 0°C. After stirring for 10 minutes the mixture was treated with HOEt (4.46 g, 33.0 mmol, 1.0 equiv) and few drops of DMF and the resulting mixture was allowed to warm to room temperature and stirred for 2 h. The mixture was again cooled down to 0°C and treated with dropwise with a solution of pyrrolidinemethanol (5 g, 49.50 mmol, 1.5 equiv) in anhydrous DCM (100 mL). When the reaction mixture was complete, as indicated by TLC (EtOAc), the reaction mixture was diluted with DCM, washed with 1N HCl (100 mL), saturated NaHCO<sub>3</sub> (100 mL), brine (100 mL), dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>), filtered and evaporated *in vacuo*. The title compound was isolated by flash column chromatography (SiO<sub>2</sub>, 50% EtOAc-hexane) to afford the coupled compound 2 (10 g, 25.7 mol, 78%) as a brown oil: [α]<sup>20</sup><sub>D</sub> = -77° (c = 0.22, CHCl<sub>3</sub>); <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, 400 MHz): δ 1.65–1.92 (m, 3H, 1-H, 2-H), 2.10–2.22 (m, 1H, 1-H), 2.96–3.08 (m, 2H, 3-H), 3.62–3.90 (m, 2H, 11-H), 3.98 (s, 3H, 7-OMe), 4.29–4.45 (m, 2H, 11a-H, OH), 5.24 (s, 2H, OBn), 6.81 (s, 1H, 6-H), 7.31–7.47 (m, 5H, Ph), 7.72 (s, 1H, 9H); <sup>13</sup>C NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, 400 MHz): δ 24.3, 28.4, 49.4, 56.5, 61.4, 66.0, 71.4, 101.4, 110.9, 127.0, 127.1, 127.4, 128.3, 128.5, 128.81, 128.87, 135.0, 137.3, 149.6, 153.4; IR (neat): 3391, 2971, 2888, 1620, 1576, 1523, 1441, 1336, 1277, 1222, 1061 cm<sup>-1</sup>; MS (FAB) *m/z* (relative intensity) 409 ([M + Na]<sup>+</sup>, 58), 387 (M<sup>+</sup>, 100), 285 (13).

(b) (2-Amino-5-benzyloxy-4-methoxybenzoyl)-pyrrolidine-2-methanol  
(3)



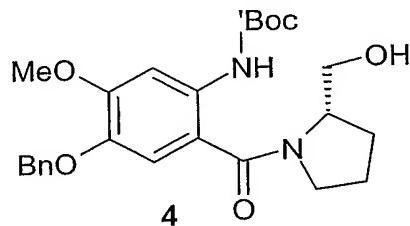
A solution of the nitro compound 2 (15.49 g, 40.12 mmol, 1.0 equiv) and tin (II) chloride (45.27 g, 200.64 mol, 5.0 equiv) in methanol (300 mL) was heated at reflux for 4 h. Excess solvent was removed by rotary evaporation under reduced pressure. The

residue was treated carefully with a saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate solution to basify the mixture to pH 9. The resulting suspension was allowed to stir overnight with ethyl acetate (100 mL), and filtrated through Celite to remove precipitated tin salts. The aqueous phase was extracted with EtOAc (2x50 mL), and the combined organic phase washed with brine (50 mL), dried ( $\text{MgSO}_4$ ), and evaporated *in vacuo* to provide **3** as a pink oil, which was used in the subsequent reaction without further purification:

$[\alpha]^{20}_{\text{D}} = -97^\circ$  ( $c = 0.18$ ,  $\text{CHCl}_3$ );  $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ , 400 MHz):  $\delta$  1.50-1.81 (m, 3H, 1-H, 2-H), 2.05-2.15 (m, 1H, 1-H), 3.03-3.16 (m, 1H, 3-H), 3.23-3.36 (m, 1H, 3-H), 3.56-3.78 (m, 2H, 11-H), 3.88 (s, 3H, 7-OMe), 4.21-4.38 (m, 1H, 11a-H), 4.47-4.75 (m, 1H, 3-H), 5.03 (d, 1H,  $J = 12.4$  Hz, OBn), 5.10 (d, 1H,  $J = 12.4$  Hz, OBn), 6.26 (s, 1H, 9-H), 6.66 (s, 1H, 6-H), 7.28-7.41 (m, 5H, Ph);  $^{13}\text{C}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ , 400 MHz):  $\delta$  24.8, 28.5, 51.1, 55.7, 61.1, 67.5, 72.5, 100.8, 116.9, 127.5, 127.7, 128.4, 137.4, 138.8, 142.6, 153.0, 171.1, 171.7; IR (neat): 3436, 33.52, 29.67, 28.73, 1621, 1589, 1513, 1448, 1402, 1264, 1216, 1172, 1110, 1025  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ ; MS (FAB)  $m/z$  (relative intensity) 379 ( $[M + \text{Na}]^{+\cdot}$ , 5), 357 ( $M^{+\cdot}$ , 100), 255 (58).

20

(c) *N*-[5-Benzyloxy-2-(tert-butyloxycarbonylamino)-4-methoxybenzoyl]-pyrrolidine-2-methanol (**4**)

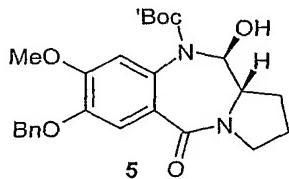


A solution of amine **3** (8 g, 22.47 mmol, 1.0 equiv) and Di-*tert*-butyl dicarbonate (7.35 g, 33.70 mmol, 1.5 equiv) in THF (150 mL) was heated at reflux overnight. The reaction mixture was allowed to cool to RT and excess THF was removed under reduced pressure to give the crude product. The residue was subjected to flash column chromatography ( $\text{SiO}_2$ , 30% EtOAc-hexane) to afford the product **4** (6.2 g, 13.59 mmol, 60%) as yellow oil:  $[\alpha]^{20}_{\text{D}} = -106^\circ$  ( $c = 0.198$ ,  $\text{CHCl}_3$ );  $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ , 400 MHz):  $\delta$  1.47 (s, 9H, Boc), 1.50-1.77 (m,

30

3H, 1-H, 2-H), 2.03-2.15 (m, 1H, 1-H), 2.83-3.00 (m, 1H, 3-H), 3.09-3.24 (m, 1H, 3-H), 3.56-3.84 (m, 2H, 11-H), 3.90 (s, 3H, 7-OMe), 4.21-4.43 (m, 2H, 11a-H, OH), 5.07 (d, 1H,  $J$  = 13 Hz, OBn), 5.19 (d, 1H,  $J$  = 13 Hz, OBn), 6.68 (s, 1H, 6-H), 7.26-7.38 (m, 5H, Ph), 7.85 (s, 1H, 9-H), 8.60 (s, 1H, NH);  $^{13}\text{C}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ , 400 MHz):  $\delta$  21.0, 28.33, 28.36, 51.1, 56.0, 61.1, 66.8, 71.6, 80.3, 104.4, 127.2, 127.8, 128.5, 133.5, 137.1, 141.4, 152.1, 153.1, 171.6; IR (neat): 3350, 2975, 1721, 1596, 1520, 1453, 1395, 1240, 1158, 1113, 1049  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ ; MS (FAB)  $m/z$  (relative intensity) 479 ([M + Na] $^{+}$ , 40), 457 (M $^{+}$ , 100), 357 (51).

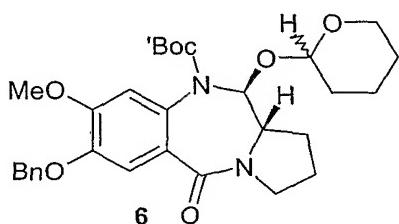
(d) (11*S*,11a*S*)-7-Benzylxy-10-(tert-butyloxycarbonyl)-11-hydroxy-8-methoxy-1,2,3,10,11,11a-hexahydro-5*H*-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepine-5-one (5)



To a solution of Boc protected amine alcohol 4 (6.2 g, 13.59 mmol, 1.0 equiv) in DCM (50 mL), BAIB (4.82 g, 14.95 mmol, 1.1 equiv) and TEMPO (0.21 g, 1.35 mmol, 0.1 equiv) were added and the mixture was stirred overnight. When the reaction was complete as indicated by TLC ( $\text{SiO}_2$ , 50% EtOAc-hexane), the reaction mixture was diluted with DCM (100 mL) and washed with saturated  $\text{Na}_2\text{S}_2\text{O}_3$  (60 mL). The aqueous layer was extracted with DCM (2x50 mL) and the combined organic layer was washed with brine (50 mL) and dried ( $\text{MgSO}_4$ ). Removal of excess solvent under reduced pressure afforded a crude solid which was washed with cold EtOAc to give cyclized PBD 5 (4.9 g, 10.8 mmol, 79%) as white solid:  $[\alpha]^{20}_{\text{D}} = +146^\circ$  ( $c = 0.178$ ,  $\text{CHCl}_3$ );  $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ , 400 MHz):  $\delta$  1.40 (s, 9H, Boc), 1.93-2.18 (m, 4H, 1-H, 2-H), 3.42-3.50 (m, 1H, 11a-H), 3.51-3.61 (m, 1H, 3-H), 3.56-3.79 (m, 2H, 3-H, OH), 3.87 (s, 3H, 7-OMe), 5.13 (d, 1H,  $J$  = 12 Hz, OBn), 5.20 (d, 1H,  $J$  = 12 Hz, OBn), 5.51-5.62 (m, 1H, 11-H), 6.63 (s, 1H, 9-H), 7.29-7.41 (m, 4H, 6-H, Ph), 7.43-7.48 (m, 2H, Ph);  $^{13}\text{C}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ , 400 MHz):  $\delta$  23.0, 28.2,

28.7, 46.3, 56.1, 59.6, 70.9, 76.7, 77.0, 77.3, 81.7, 85.7, 112.3,  
 112.9, 125.4, 127.5, 128.0, 128.5, 129.6, 136.4, 147.2, 151.0,  
 159.0, 166.9; IR (neat): 3372, 2977, 2879, 1698, 1622, 1514, 1450,  
 1393, 1368, 1326, 1279, 1215, 1162, 1135, 1103, 1052, 1025cm<sup>-1</sup>; MS  
 5 (FAB) *m/z* (relative intensity) 477 ([M + Na]<sup>+</sup>, 35), 455 (M<sup>+</sup>,  
 100), 399 (85), 337 (20).

(e) (11*S*,11*aS*)-7-Benzylxy-10-(tert-butyloxycarbonyl)-8-methoxy-  
 11-(tetrahydroxy-pyran-2-yloxy)-1,2,3,10,11,11*a*-hexahydro-5*H*-  
 10 pyrrolo[2,1-*c*][1,4]benzodiazepine-5-one (**6**)

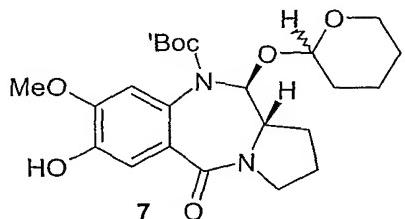


A catalytic amount of PTSA was added to a solution of DHP (2.87 g, 34.14 mmol, 5.0 equiv) in EtOAc (10 mL) at 0°C. After stirring 10 minutes, the cyclized compound 5 (3.1 g, 6.8 mmol, 1.0 equiv) was added portion-wise to the mixture and the resulting mixture was stirred until starting material disappearance by TLC (SiO<sub>2</sub>, 50% EtOAc-hexane). The mixture was diluted with EtOAc (100 mL), washed with saturated NaHCO<sub>3</sub> (30mL), brine (30 mL) and dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>). Removal of excess solvent afforded the protected compound **6** (3.5 g, 6.5 mmol, 95% yield, mixture of diastereomers from THP protecting group), which was used in the subsequent reaction without further purification: [α]<sup>20</sup><sub>D</sub> = +33° (c = 0.21, CHCl<sub>3</sub>); <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, 400 MHz): δ 1.36 (s, 18H, Boc), 1.47-1.92 (m, 12H, THP), 1.93-2.20 (m, 8H, 1-H, 2-H), 3.41-3.75 (m, 8H, 3-H, 11a-H, THP), 3.84-4.09 (m, 8H, 7-OMe, THP), 4.82-5.28 (m, 6H, OBN, THP), 5.69-5.79 (d, 1H, 11-H), 5.80-5.91 (d, 1H, 11-H), 6.54 (s, 1H, 9-H), 6.91 (s, 1H, 9-H), 7.27-7.47 (m, 12H, 6-H, Ph); <sup>13</sup>C NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, 400 MHz): δ 19.8, 23.2, 25.31, 25.34, 25.4, 28.1, 28.2, 28.8, 29.1, 30.7, 30.9, 46.2, 55.9, 56.2, 60.0, 60.1, 63.3, 63.4, 70.94, 70.98, 81.0, 81.3, 88.2, 91.2, 98.4, 100.3, 112.0, 112.1, 113.6, 114.2, 126.4, 127.50, 127.54, 127.9, 128.0, 128.56, 128.58, 130.2,

136.5, 136.6, 147.4, 147.7, 151.0, 151.4, 159.0, 159.5, 167.2, 167.4; IR (neat): 3410, 2944, 2873, 1703, 1645, 1604, 1513, 1448, 1393, 1326, 1271, 1216, 1163, 1022cm<sup>-1</sup>; MS (FAB) m/z (relative intensity) 561 ([M + Na]<sup>+</sup>, 5), 539 (M<sup>+</sup>, 100), 337 (82), 483 (24).

5

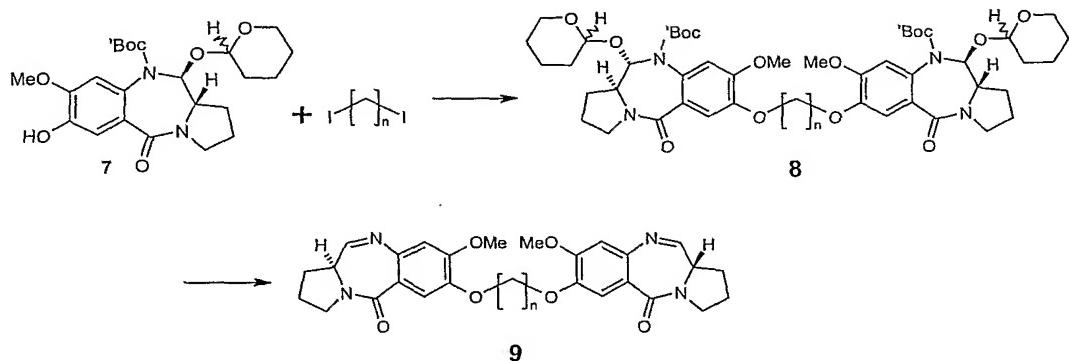
(f) (11*S*,11*aS*)-10-(tert-Butyloxycarbonyl)-7-hydroxy-8-methoxy-11-(tetrahydroxy-pyran-2-yloxy)-1,2,3,10,11,11*a*-hexahydro-5*H*-pyrrolo[2,1-*c*][1,4]benzodiazepine-5-one (7)



10 A catalytic amount of 10% palladium on carbon (380 mg) was added to a solution of THP protected compound 6 (3.8 g, 7 mmol) in absolute alcohol (30 mL). The reaction mixture was hydrogenated for 3h at 35 Psi. When the reaction was complete as indicated by TLC (SiO<sub>2</sub>, 50%EtOAc-hexane) the reaction mixture was filtered through Celite, and removal of excess solvent under reduced pressure afforded the phenol 7 (2.8 g, 6.25 mmol, 90% yield, mixture of diastereomers from THP protecting group) as a white solid: [α]<sup>20</sup><sub>D</sub> = +52° (c = 0.183, CHCl<sub>3</sub>); <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, 400 MHz): δ 1.35 (s, 18H, Boc), 1.48-1.68 (m, 6H, THP), 1.69-1.88 (m, 6H, THP), 1.91-2.18 (m, 8H, 1-H, 2-H), 3.44-3.75 (m, 8H, 3-H, 11a-H, THP), 3.84-4.02 (m, 8H, 7-OMe, THP), 4.96-5.09 (m, 1H, THP), 5.10-5.18 (m, 1H, THP), 5.69-5.76 (d, 1H, 11-H), 5.77-5.87 (d, 1H, 11-H), 6.03 (s, 1H, OH), 6.14 (s, 1H, OH), 6.49 (s, 1H, 9-H), 6.86 (s, 1H, 9-H), 7.28 (s, 1H, 6-H), 7.32 (s, 1H, 6-H); <sup>13</sup>C NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, 400 MHz): δ 19.8, 20.5, 23.1, 23.2, 25.2, 25.3, 28.1, 28.2, 28.8, 29.1, 30.8, 31.2, 46.2, 55.9, 56.1, 59.9, 60.1, 63.3, 64.6, 80.9, 88.1, 91.1, 95.2, 100.4, 112.6, 113.3, 113.6, 114.2, 127.1, 129.0, 145.0, 145.3, 148.1, 148.5, 155.1, 167.1, 167.3; IR (neat): 3306, 2946, 1703, 1632, 1511, 1453, 1394, 1368, 1334, 1274, 1212, 1163, 1116, 1023cm<sup>-1</sup>; MS (FAB) m/z (relative intensity) 471 ([M + Na]<sup>+</sup>, 5), 449 (M<sup>+</sup>, 100), 246 (50), 393 (22).

**NOT FURNISHED UPON FILING**

**Examples 2-11 - Formation of PBD dimmers linked at the C-7 position (9)**



*n* = 3,4,5,6,7,8,9,10,11,12

**Example 2 (n=3)**

(a) 1,1'-[(Propane-1,3-diyl)dioxy]bis[(11*S*,11*aS*)-10-(tert-butyloxycarbonyl)-8-methoxy-11-(tetrahydro-pyran-2-yloxy)-1,2,3,10,11,11*a*-hexahydro-5*H*-pyrrolo[2,1-*c*][1,4]benzodiazepine-5-one] (**8a**)

Diiodopropane (0.1 g, 0.22 mmol, 0.5 equiv) was added to the mixture of monomer **7** (0.2 g, 0.44 mmol, 1.0 equiv) and potassium carbonate (0.98 mmol, 2.2 equiv) in dry DMF (30 mL), and the resulting mixture was heated to 90°C under a nitrogen atmosphere for 5 hours. Removal of excess solvent under reduced pressure afforded a crude solid, which was subjected to flash column chromatography (SiO<sub>2</sub>, 50% EtOAc-hexane) to afford the dimerized compound **8a** (80 mg, 0.08 mmol, 38% yield, mixture of diastereomers from THP protecting group as a solid: [α]<sup>20</sup><sub>D</sub> = +31° (c = 0.16, CHCl<sub>3</sub>); <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, 400 MHz): δ 1.35 (s, 36H, Boc), 1.44-1.67 (m, 16H, THP), 1.68-1.86 (m, 8H, THP), 1.91-2.20 (m, 16H, 1-H, 2-H), 2.35-2.44 (m, 4H, 13-H), 3.42-3.75 (m, 16H, 3-H, 11*a*-H, THP), 3.84-4.02 (m, 16H, 7-OMe, THP), 4.19-4.38 (m, 8H, 12-H), 5.01-5.10 (m, 2H, THP), 5.11-5.20 (m, 2H, THP), 5.69-5.77 (d, 2H, 11-H), 5.79-5.89 (d, 2H, 11-H), 6.50 (s, 2H, 9-H), 6.88 (s, 2H, 9-H), 7.22 (s, 2H, 6-H), 7.26 (s, 2H, 6-H); <sup>13</sup>C NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, 400 MHz): δ 19.8, 20.5, 23.1, 23.2, 25.3, 28.1, 28.2, 28.8, 29.0, 29.1, 30.9, 31.2, 46.3, 55.9, 56.1, 60.0, 60.1, 63.3, 64.5, 65.4, 81.0, 88.1, 91.2, 95.9, 100.2, 111.5, 113.5, 114.1, 129.9, 139.6, 144.5,

147.3, 147.8, 155.9, 167.4, 167.6; IR (neat): 3306, 2945, 1704, 1643, 1605, 1513, 1450, 1393, 1327, 1217, 1164, 1022cm<sup>-1</sup>; MS (FAB) m/z (relative intensity) 937 (M<sup>+</sup>, 100), 735 (25), 954 (14).

5 (b) 1,1'-(Propane-1,3-diyl)dioxy]bis[(11aS)-8-methoxy-1,2,3,11a-tetrahydro-5H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepine-5-one] (**9a**)  
95% TFA (3 mL) was added drop-wise to dimer compound **8a** (80 mg, 0.08 mmol) at 0°C. This was then stirred for 1hr and the mixture was poured into saturated NaHCO<sub>3</sub> (30 mL) solution to neutralize the  
10 reaction mixture. The mixture was extracted with chloroform (3x20 mL). The organic layer was then washed water (20 mL), brine (20 mL) then dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>) and filtrated. The excess solvent was removed under reduced pressure to give the crude product, which was subjected to flash column chromatography (SiO<sub>2</sub>, 2%methanol-chloroform). Removal of excess eluent under reduced pressure  
15 without heating afforded the final product **9a** (31 mg, 0.06 mmol, 75%) as a solid: [α]<sup>20</sup><sub>D</sub> = +515° (c = 0.10, CHCl<sub>3</sub>); <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, 400 MHz): δ 2.01-2.11 (m, 4H, 2-H, 2'-H), 2.28-2.36 (m, 4H, 1-H, 1'-H), 2.38-2.45 (m, 2H, 13-H), 3.52-3.61 (m, 2H, 3-H, 3'-H), 3.67-  
20 3.75 (m, 2H, 11a-H, 11a'-H), 3.77-3.85 (m, 2H, 3-H, 3'-H), 3.90 (s, 6H, 7-OMe, 7'-OMe), 4.23-4.30 (m, 4H, 12-H, 12'-H), 6.79 (s, 2H, 9-H, 9'-H), 7.53 (s, 2H, 6-H, 6'-H), 7.65 (d, 2H, J = 4, 11-H, 11'-H); <sup>13</sup>C NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, 400 MHz): δ 24.1, 29.0, 29.6, 46.6, 53.7, 56.0, 65.6, 109.6, 112.9, 120.2, 140.7, 146.9, 151.8, 162.3,  
25 164.6; IR (neat): 3350, 2956, 1599, 1506, 1447, 1385, 1262, 1216, 1091cm<sup>-1</sup>; MS (FAB) m/z (relative intensity) 597 ([M + 2 × MeOH]<sup>+</sup>, 22), 565 ([M + MeOH]<sup>+</sup>, 25), 533 (M<sup>+</sup>, 100).

**Example 3 (n=4)**

30 (a) 1,1'-(Butane-1,4-diyl)dioxy]bis[(11S,11aS)-10-(tert-butyloxycarbonyl)-8-methoxy-11-(tetrahydro-pyran-2-yloxy)-  
butyloxycarbonyl)-1,2,3,10,11,11a-hexahydro-5H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepine-5-one] (**8b**)  
1,4-Diodobutane (69.1 mg, was added to the mixture of monomer 7  
35 (0.2 g, 0.44 mmol, 1.0 equiv) and potassium carbonate (0.98 mmol, 2.2 equiv) in dry DMF (30 mL), and the resulting mixture was

heated to 90°C under a nitrogen atmosphere for 5 h. Removal of excess solvent under reduced pressure afforded a crude solid, which was subjected to flash column chromatography (SiO<sub>2</sub>, 50%EtOAc-hexane) to afford the dimerized compound **8b** (134 mg, 0.14 mmol, 63% yield, mixture of diastereomers from THP protecting group as a solid:  $[\alpha]^{20}_D = +36^\circ$  (*c* = 0.19, CHCl<sub>3</sub>); <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, 400 MHz):  $\delta$  1.35 (s, 36H, Boc), 1.45-1.67 (m, 16H, THP), 1.68-1.86 (m, 8H, THP), 1.90-2.21 (m, 24H, 1-H, 2-H, 13-H), 3.44-3.78 (m, 16H, 3-H, 11a-H, THP), 3.84-4.02 (m, 16H, 7-OMe, THP), 4.04-4.25 (m, 8H, 12-H), 5.02-5.10 (m, 2H, THP), 5.11-5.20 (m, 2H, THP), 5.69-5.77 (d, 2H, 11-H), 5.79-5.89 (d, 2H, 11-H), 6.51 (s, 2H, 9-H), 6.88 (s, 2H, 9-H), 7.19 (s, 2H, 6-H), 7.28 (s, 2H, 6-H); <sup>13</sup>C NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, 400 MHz):  $\delta$  19.8, 20.5, 23.1, 23.2, 25.3, 25.9, 28.1, 28.2, 28.9, 29.1, 30.9, 31.2, 46.2, 55.9, 56.2, 60.1, 63.3, 63.6, 68.6, 80.9, 88.2, 91.2, 96.2, 100.2, 111.1, 111.4, 113.4, 114.1, 118.5, 126.4, 129.8, 143.1, 147.9, 148.2, 151.5, 151.8, 155.8, 167.4, 167.6; IR (neat): 2945, 1704, 1644, 1604, 1513, 1449, 1392, 1327, 1217, 1163, 1022 cm<sup>-1</sup>; MS (FAB) *m/z* (relative intensity) 973 ([M + Na]<sup>+</sup>, 11), 951 (M<sup>+</sup>, 100), 749 (36).

(b) 1,1'-[(Butane-1,4-diyl)dioxy]bis[(11aS)-8-methoxy-1,2,3,11a-tetrahydro-5H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepine-5-one] (**9b**)  
95% TFA (3 mL) was added drop-wise to dimer compound **8b** (134 mg, 0.14 mmol) at 0°C. This was then stirred for 1hr and the mixture was poured into saturated NaHCO<sub>3</sub> (30 mL) solution to naturalize the reaction mixture. The mixture was extracted with chloroform (3x20 mL). The organic layer was then washed water (20 mL), brine (20 mL) then dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>) and filtrated. The excess solvent was removed under reduced pressure to give the crude product, which was subjected to flash column chromatography (SiO<sub>2</sub>, 2%methanol-chloroform). Removal of excess eluent under reduced pressure without heating afforded the final product **9b** (60 mg, 0.11 mmol, 78%) as a solid:  $[\alpha]^{20}_D = +477^\circ$  (*c* = 0.09, CHCl<sub>3</sub>); <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, 400 MHz):  $\delta$  1.88-2.06 (m, 8H, 2-H, 2'-H, 13-H, 13'-H), 2.16-2.36 (m, 4H, 1-H, 1'-H), 3.46-3.57 (m, 2H, 3-H, 3'-H), 3.63-3.69 (m, 2H, 11a-H, 11a'-H), 3.60-3.69 (m, 2H, 3-H, 3'-H), 3.82 (s, 6H, 7-OMe,

7'-OMe), 3.98-4.19 (m, 4H, 12-H, 12'-H), 6.72 (s, 2H, 9-H, 9'-H), 7.44 (s, 2H, 6-H, 6'-H), 7.59 (d, 2H,  $J$  = 4, 11-H, 11'-H);  $^{13}\text{C}$  NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, 400 MHz):  $\delta$  24.1, 25.8, 29.65, 46.6, 53.7, 56.0, 68.6, 109.6, 112.6, 120.2, 140.6, 147.0, 151.7, 162.8, 164.6; IR (neat): 5 3354, 2950, 1622, 1600, 1506, 1447, 1387, 1262, 1216, 1092, 1026cm<sup>-1</sup>; MS (FAB)  $m/z$  (relative intensity) 611 ([M + 2 x MeOH]<sup>+</sup>, 9), 579 ([M + MeOH]<sup>+</sup>, 19), 547 (M<sup>+</sup>, 100).

**Example 4 (n=5)**

(a) 1,1'-(Pentane-1,5-diyl)dioxy]bis[(11*S*,11*a**S*)-10-(tert-butylloxycarbonyl)-8-methoxy-11-(tetrahydro-pyran-2-yloxy)-1,2,3,10,11,11*a*-hexahydro-5*H*-pyrrolo[2,1-*c*][1,4]benzodiazepine-5-one] (**8c**)

1,5-Diodopentane (72.2 mg, 0.22 mmol, 0.5 equiv) was added to the mixture of monomer **7** (0.2 g, 0.44 mmol, 1.0 equiv) and potassium carbonate (0.98 mmol, 2.2 equiv) in dry DMF (30 mL), and the resulting mixture was heated to 90°C under a nitrogen atmosphere for 5 hours. Removal of excess solvent under reduced pressure afforded a crude solid, which was subjected to flash column chromatography (SiO<sub>2</sub>, 50%EtOAc-hexane) to afford the dimerized compound **8c** (160 mg, 0.16 mmol, 74% yield, mixture of diastereomers from THP protecting group) as a solid:  $[\alpha]^{20}\text{D} = +40^\circ$  (c = 0.16, CHCl<sub>3</sub>);  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, 400 MHz):  $\delta$  1.35 (s, 36H, Boc), 1.45-1.86 (m, 28H, 14-H, THP), 1.88-2.22 (m, 24H, 1-H, 2-H, 13-H), 25 3.44-3.77 (m, 16H, 3-H, 11*a*-H, THP), 3.82-4.02 (m, 16H, 7-OMe, THP), 4.03-4.19 (m, 8H, 12-H), 5.02-5.10 (m, 2H, THP), 5.11-5.20 (m, 2H, THP), 5.69-5.77 (d, 2H, 11-H), 5.79-5.89 (d, 2H, 11-H), 6.51 (s, 2H, 9-H), 6.88 (s, 2H, 9-H), 7.19 (s, 2H, 6-H), 7.22 (s, 2H, 6-H);  $^{13}\text{C}$  NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, 400 MHz):  $\delta$  19.8, 20.4, 22.5, 23.1, 23.2, 30 25.3, 28.1, 28.2, 28.8, 29.1, 30.9, 31.2, 46.3, 55.9, 56.2, 60.0, 60.1, 63.3, 64.4, 68.8, 80.9, 81.2, 88.3, 91.4, 96.0, 100.4, 111.2, 113.5, 114.1, 126.5, 129.8, 135.8, 147.4, 148.0, 150.9, 154.4, 167.4, 167.6; IR (neat): 2945, 1704, 1643, 1604, 1513, 1449, 1392, 1327, 1217, 1163, 1022cm<sup>-1</sup>; MS (FAB)  $m/z$  (relative intensity) 987 ([M + Na]<sup>+</sup>, 14), 965 (M<sup>+</sup>, 100), 863 (9).

(b) 1,1'-[(Pentane-1,5-diyl)dioxy]bis[(11a*S*)-8-methoxy-1,2,3,11a-tetrahydro-5H-pyrrolo[2,1-*c*][1,4]benzodiazepine-5-one] (**9c**)  
95% TFA (3 mL) was added drop-wise to dimer compound **8c** (160 mg, 0.16 mmol) at 0°C. This was then stirred for 1hr and the mixture  
5 was poured into saturated NaHCO<sub>3</sub> (30 mL) solution to naturalize the reaction mixture. The mixture was extracted with chloroform (3x20 mL). The organic layer was then washed water (20 mL), brine (20 mL) then dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>) and filtrated. The excess solvent was removed under reduced pressure to give the crude product, which  
10 was subjected to flash column chromatography (SiO<sub>2</sub>, 2%methanol-chloroform). Removal of excess eluent under reduced pressure without heating afforded the final product **9c** (72 mg, 0.13 mmol, 81 %) as a solid: [α]<sup>20</sup><sub>D</sub> = +416° (c = 0.12, CHCl<sub>3</sub>); <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, 400 MHz): δ 1.62-1.71 (m, 2H, 14-H), 1.88-1.99 (m, 4H, 13-H, 13'-H), 2.01-2.11 (m, 4H, 2-H, 2'-H), 2.26-2.36 (m, 4H, 1-H, 1'-H),  
15 3.53-3.62 (m, 2H, 3-H, 3'-H), 3.69-3.75 (m, 2H, 11a-H, 11a'-H), 3.76-3.85 (m, 2H, 3-H, 3'-H), 3.90 (s, 6H, 7-OMe, 7'-OMe), 4.02-4.21 (m, 4H, 12-H, 12'-H), 6.79 (s, 2H, 9-H, 9'-H), 7.50 (s, 2H, 6-H, 6'-H), 7.65 (d, 2H, J = 4, 11-H, 11'-H); <sup>13</sup>C NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, 400 MHz): δ 22.5, 24.1, 28.8, 29.6, 46.6, 53.7, 56.0, 68.9, 109.6, 112.6, 120.2, 140.5, 147.0, 151.7, 162.3, 164.6; IR (neat): 3325, 2946, 1600, 1505, 1448, 1386, 1262, 1217, 1091, 1023cm<sup>-1</sup>; MS (FAB) m/z (relative intensity) 625 ([M + 2 × MeOH]<sup>+</sup>, 19), 593 ([M + MeOH]<sup>+</sup>, 25), 561 (M<sup>+</sup>, 100).

25

**Example 5 (n=6)**

(a) 1,1'-[(Hexane-1,6-diyl)dioxy]bis[(11*S*,11a*S*)-10-(tert-butyloxycarbonyl)-8-methoxy-11-(tetrahydro-pyran-2-yloxy)-1,2,3,10,11,11a-hexahydro-5H-pyrrolo[2,1-*c*][1,4]benzodiazepine-5-one] (**8d**)

1,6-Diodohexane (75.3 mg, 0.00 mmol, 0.5 equiv) was added to the mixture of monomer **7** (0.2 g, 0.44 mmol, 1.0 equiv) and potassium carbonate (0.98 mmol, 2.2 equiv) in dry DMF (30 mL), and the resulting mixture was heated to 90°C under a nitrogen atmosphere  
30 for 5 hours. Removal of excess solvent under reduced pressure afforded a crude solid, which was subjected to flash column  
35

chromatography ( $\text{SiO}_2$ , 50%EtOAc-hexane) to afford the dimerized compound **8d** (174 mg, 0.17 mmol, 79% yield, mixture of diastereomers from THP protecting group) as a solid:  $[\alpha]^{20}_{\text{D}} = +44^\circ$  ( $c = 0.16$ ,  $\text{CHCl}_3$ );  $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ , 400 MHz):  $\delta$  1.25-1.67 (m, 60H, 14-H, Boc, THP), 1.70-2.24 (m, 32H, 1-H, 2-H, 13-H, THP), 3.44-3.77 (m, 16H, 3-H, 11a-H, THP), 3.84-4.18 (m, 24H, 12-H, 7-OMe, THP), 5.02-5.10 (m, 2H, THP), 5.11-5.20 (m, 2H, THP), 5.69-5.77 (d, 2H, 11-H), 5.79-5.89 (d, 2H, 11-H), 6.51 (s, 2H, 9-H), 6.87 (s, 2H, 9-H), 7.18 (s, 2H, 6-H), 7.22 (s, 2H, 6-H);  $^{13}\text{C}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ , 400 MHz):  $\delta$  19.8, 20.3, 23.1, 23.2, 25.3, 25.8, 28.1, 28.2, 28.9, 29.0, 29.1, 30.9, 31.2, 46.3, 55.9, 56.2, 60.0, 60.1, 63.3, 64.1, 68.9, 80.9, 81.2, 88.2, 91.1, 95.0, 100.5, 111.2, 111.7, 113.5, 114.1, 118.2, 127.1, 134.8, 147.7, 148.0, 155.2, 162.3, 163.0, 167.4, 167.6; IR (neat): 2943, 1703, 1644, 1604, 1513, 1449, 1392, 1327, 1217, 1163,  $1022\text{cm}^{-1}$ ; MS (FAB)  $m/z$  (relative intensity) 1001 ( $[M + \text{Na}]^{+\cdot}$ , 10), 979 ( $M^{+\cdot}$ , 100), 777 (24), 877 (12).

(b) 1,1'-(*Hexane-1,6-diy1*)dioxybis[(11a*S*)-8-methoxy-1,2,3,11a-tetrahydro-5*H*-pyrrolo[2,1-*c*][1,4]benzodiazepine-5-one] (**9d**)

95% TFA (3 mL) was added drop-wise to dimer compound **8d** (174 mg, 0.17 mmol) at 0°C. This was then stirred for 1hr and the mixture was poured into saturated  $\text{NaHCO}_3$  (30 mL) solution to naturalize the reaction mixture. The mixture was extracted with chloroform (3x20 mL). The organic layer was then washed water (20 mL), brine (20 mL) then dried ( $\text{MgSO}_4$ ) and filtrated. The excess solvent was removed under reduced pressure to give the crude product, which was subjected to flash column chromatography ( $\text{SiO}_2$ , 2%methanol-chloroform). Removal of excess eluent under reduced pressure without heating afforded the final product **9d** (86 mg, 0.15 mmol, 88%) as a solid:  $[\alpha]^{20}_{\text{D}} = +500^\circ$  ( $c = 0.09$ ,  $\text{CHCl}_3$ );  $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ , 400 MHz):  $\delta$  1.39-1.55 (m, 4H, 14-H, 14'-H), 1.72-1.89 (m, 4H, 13-H, 13'-H), 1.91-2.05 (m, 4H, 2-H, 2'-H), 2.17-2.31 (m, 4H, 1-H, 1'-H), 3.45-3.56 (m, 2H, 3-H, 3'-H), 3.62-3.69 (m, 2H, 11a-H, 11a'-H), 3.70-3.79 (m, 2H, 3-H, 3'-H), 3.83 (s, 6H, 7-OMe, 7'-OMe), 3.95-4.13 (m, 4H, 12-H, 12'-H), 6.73 (s, 2H, 9-H, 9'-H), 7.43 (s, 2H, 6-H, 6'-H), 7.58 (d, 2H,  $J = 4$ , 11-H, 11'-H);  $^{13}\text{C}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ ,

400 MHz):  $\delta$  24.1, 25.7, 29.0, 29.6, 46.6, 53.7, 56.0, 69.0, 109.6, 112.5, 120.2, 140.5, 147.1, 151.7, 162.8, 164.6; IR (neat): 3385, 2945, 1622, 1599, 1506, 1447, 1387, 1261, 1217, 1093 cm<sup>-1</sup>; MS (FAB)  $m/z$  (relative intensity) 639 ([ $M + 2 \times$  MeOH]<sup>+</sup>, 4), 607 ([ $M +$  MeOH]<sup>+</sup>, 12), 575 ( $M^+$ , 100).

5           **Example 6 (n=7)**

(a) 1,1'-[*(Heptane-1,7-diyl)dioxy*]bis[*(11S,11aS)-10-(tert-butyloxycarbonyl)-8-methoxy-11-(tetrahydro-pyran-2-yloxy)-1,2,3,10,11,11a-hexahydro-5H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepine-5-one*] (**8e**)

10           1,7-Dibromoheptane (57.5 mg, 0.22 mmol, 0.5 equiv) was added to the mixture of monomer **7** (0.2 g, 0.44 mmol, 1.0 equiv) potassium carbonate (0.98 mmol, 2.2 equiv) and a catalytic amount of potassium iodide in dry DMF (30 mL), and the resulting mixture was heated to 90°C under a nitrogen atmosphere for 5 h. Removal of excess solvent under reduced pressure afforded a crude solid, which was subjected to flash column chromatography (SiO<sub>2</sub>, 50% EtOAc-hexane) to afford the dimerized compound **8e** (190 mg, 0.19 mmol, 88% yield, mixture of diastereomers from THP protecting group) as a solid:  $[\alpha]^{20}_D = +59^\circ$  ( $c = 0.16$ , CHCl<sub>3</sub>); <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, 400 MHz):  $\delta$  1.25-1.67 (m, 64H, 14-H, 15-H, Boc, THP), 1.68-1.92 (16H, 13-H, THP), 1.93-2.21 (m, 16H, 1-H, 2-H), 3.44-3.75 (m, 16H, 3-H, 11a-H, THP), 3.84-4.17 (m, 24H, 12-H, 7-OMe, THP), 5.02-5.10 (m, 2H, THP), 5.11-5.20 (m, 2H, THP), 5.69-5.77 (d, 2H, 11-H), 5.79-5.89 (d, 2H, 11-H), 6.51 (s, 2H, 9-H), 6.87 (s, 2H, 9-H), 7.19 (s, 2H, 6-H), 7.22 (s, 2H, 6-H); <sup>13</sup>C NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, 400 MHz):  $\delta$  19.8, 20.4, 23.1, 23.2, 25.3, 25.9, 28.1, 28.2, 28.9, 29.0, 29.1, 30.9, 31.2, 46.3, 55.9, 56.2, 60.0, 60.1, 63.3, 64.4, 69.0, 80.6, 80.9, 88.2, 91.2, 96.4, 100.2, 111.3, 111.9, 113.4, 114.0, 115.5, 116.1, 126.3, 129.7, 149.6, 149.9, 151.1, 155.5, 167.4, 167.6; IR (neat): 2942, 1704, 1643, 1604, 1514, 1450, 1392, 1327, 1218, 1164, 1022 cm<sup>-1</sup>; MS (FAB)  $m/z$  (relative intensity) 1015 ([ $M + Na$ ]<sup>+</sup>, 12), 993 ( $M^+$ , 100), 791 (23), 891 (9).

(b) 1,1'-(*(Heptane-1,7-diyl)dioxy*)bis[*(11aS)-8-methoxy-1,2,3,11a-tetrahydro-5H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepine-5-one*] (**9e**)

95% TFA (3 mL) was added drop-wise to dimer compound **8e** (195 mg, 0.19 mmol) at 0°C. This was then stirred for 1hr and the mixture was poured into saturated NaHCO<sub>3</sub> (30 mL) solution to naturalize the reaction mixture. The mixture was extracted with chloroform (3x20 mL). The organic layer was then washed water (20 mL), brine (20 mL) then dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>) and filtrated. The excess solvent was removed under reduced pressure to give the crude product, which was subjected to flash column chromatography (SiO<sub>2</sub>, 2%methanol-chloroform). Removal of excess eluent under reduced pressure without heating afforded the final product **9e** (76 mg, 0.12 mmol, 68 %) as a solid: [α]<sup>20</sup><sub>D</sub> = +473° (c = 0.14, CHCl<sub>3</sub>); <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, 400 MHz): δ 1.41-1.55 (m, 6H, 14-H, 14'-H, 15-H), 1.85-1.94 (m, 4H, 13-H, 13'-H), 2.04-2.10 (m, 4H, 2-H, 2'-H), 2.28-2.38 (m, 4H, 1-H, 1'-H), 3.56-3.63 (m, 2H, 3-H, 3'-H), 3.72-3.76 (m, 2H, 11a-H, 11a'-H), 3.79-3.85 (m, 2H, 3-H, 3'-H), 3.92 (s, 6H, 7-OMe, 7'-OMe), 4.01-4.19 (m, 4H, 12-H, 12'-H), 6.79 (s, 2H, 9-H, 9'-H), 7.49 (s, 2H, 6-H, 6'-H), 7.64 (d, 2H, J = 4, 11-H, 11'-H); <sup>13</sup>C NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, 400 MHz): δ 24.1, 25.9, 29.0, 29.2, 29.6, 46.6, 53.7, 56.0, 69.1, 109.6, 112.5, 120.2, 140.5, 147.1, 151.6, 162.2, 164.6; IR (neat): 3325, 2935, 1600, 1506, 1448, 1388, 1261, 1217, 1022cm<sup>-1</sup>; MS (FAB) m/z (relative intensity) 653 ([M + 2 x MeOH]<sup>++</sup>, 14), 621 ([M + MeOH]<sup>++</sup>, 20), 589 (M<sup>+</sup>, 100).

25 .

**Example 7 (n=8)**

(a) 1,1'-(*(Octane-1,8-diyl)dioxy*)bis[*(11S,11aS)-10-(tert-butyloxycarbonyl)-8-methoxy-11-(tetrahydro-pyran-2-yloxy)-1,2,3,10,11,11a-hexahydro-5H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepine-5-one*] (**8f**)

1,8-Diodooctane (81.6 mg, 0.22 mmol, 0.5 equiv) was added to the mixture of monomer **7** (0.2 g, 0.44 mmol, 1.0 equiv) and potassium carbonate (0.98 mmol, 2.2 equiv) in dry DMF (30 mL), and the resulting mixture was heated to 90°C under a nitrogen atmosphere for 5 h. Removal of excess solvent under reduced pressure afforded a crude solid, which was subjected to flash column chromatography

( $\text{SiO}_2$ , 50% EtOAc-hexane) to afford the dimerized compound **8f** (191 mg, 0.18 mmol, 85% yield, mixture of diastereomers from THP protecting group) as a solid:  $[\alpha]^{20}_D = +50^\circ$  ( $c = 0.15$ ,  $\text{CHCl}_3$ );  $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ , 400 MHz):  $\delta$  1.27-1.66 (m, 68H, 14-H, 15-H, Boc, THP), 1.68-1.91 (16H, 3-H, THP), 1.93-2.20 (m, 16H, 1-H, 2-H), 3.45-3.75 (m, 16H, 3-H, 11a-H, THP), 3.83-4.14 (m, 24H, 12-H, 7-OMe, THP), 5.02-5.10 (m, 2H, THP), 5.11-5.20 (m, 2H, THP), 5.69-5.77 (d, 2H, 11-H), 5.79-5.89 (d, 2H, 11-H), 6.51 (s, 2H, 9-H), 6.87 (s, 2H, 9-H), 7.19 (s, 2H, 6-H), 7.22 (s, 2H, 6-H);  $^{13}\text{C}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ , 400 MHz):  $\delta$  19.8, 20.4, 23.1, 23.2, 25.3, 25.9, 28.1, 28.2, 28.9, 29.0, 29.1, 29.3, 30.9, 31.2, 46.3, 55.9, 56.2, 60.0, 60.1, 63.3, 64.4, 69.0, 80.9, 81.2, 88.2, 91.2, 95.8, 100.2, 111.1, 111.7, 113.4, 114.0, 122.0, 126.4, 129.7, 138.0, 147.8, 148.1, 150.1, 150.5, 155.7, 167.4, 167.6; IR (neat): 2941, 1704, 1643, 1604, 1514, 1450, 1392, 1327, 1218, 1164,  $1022\text{cm}^{-1}$ ; MS (FAB)  $m/z$  (relative intensity) 1029 ( $[M + \text{Na}]^+$ , 30), 1007 ( $M^+$ , 100), 905 (15).

(b) 1,1'-(Octane-1,8-diyl)dioxybis[(11aS)-8-methoxy-1,2,3,11a-tetrahydro-5H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepine-5-one] (**9f**)  
95% TFA (3 mL) was added drop-wise to dimer compound **8f** (191 mg, 0.18 mmol) at 0°C. This was then stirred for 1hr and the mixture was poured into saturated  $\text{NaHCO}_3$  (30 mL) solution to naturalize the reaction mixture. The mixture was extracted with chloroform (3x20 mL). The organic layer was then washed water (20 mL), brine (20 mL) then dried ( $\text{MgSO}_4$ ) and filtrated. The excess solvent was removed under reduced pressure to give the crude product, which was subjected to flash column chromatography ( $\text{SiO}_2$ , 2%methanol-chloroform). Removal of excess eluent under reduced pressure without heating afforded the final product **9f** (106 mg, 0.17 mmol, 97%) as a solid:  $[\alpha]^{20}_D = +467^\circ$  ( $c = 0.14$ ,  $\text{CHCl}_3$ );  $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ , 400 MHz):  $\delta$  1.34-1.53 (m, 8H, 14-H, 14'-H, 15-H, 15'-H), 1.78-1.91 (m, 4H, 13-H, 13'-H), 1.96-2.10 (m, 4H, 2-H, 2'-H), 2.25-2.38 (m, 4H, 1-H, 1'-H), 3.54-3.63 (m, 2H, 3-H, 3'-H), 3.70-3.76 (m, 2H, 11a-H, 11a'-H), 3.77-3.88 (m, 2H, 3-H, 3'-H), 3.90 (s, 6H, 7-OMe, 7'-OMe), 4.04-4.17 (m, 4H, 12-H, 12'-H), 6.81 (s, 2H, 9-H, 9'-H), 7.52 (s, 2H, 6-H, 6'-H), 7.67 (d, 2H,  $J = 4$ , 11-H, 11'-H);  $^{13}\text{C}$  NMR

(CDCl<sub>3</sub>, 400 MHz): δ 24.1, 25.8, 29.0, 29.1, 29.6, 46.6, 53.7, 56.0, 69.0, 109.6, 112.5, 120.2, 140.5, 147.1, 151.6, 162.3, 164.6; IR (neat): 3326, 2937, 1599, 1506, 1448, 1387, 1262, 1217, 1092, 1023cm<sup>-1</sup>; MS (FAB) m/z (relative intensity) 667 ([M + 2 x MeOH]<sup>+</sup>, 7), 635 ([M + MeOH]<sup>+</sup>, 15), 603 (M<sup>+</sup>, 100).

5           **Example 8 (n=9)**

(a) 1,1'-(Nonane-1,9-diyl)dioxy]bis[(11*S*,11*aS*)-10-(tert-butyloxycarbonyl)-8-methoxy-11-(tetrahydro-pyran-2-yloxy)-1,2,3,10,11,11*a*-hexahydro-5*H*-pyrrolo[2,1-*c*][1,4]benzodiazepine-5-one] (**8g**)

10           1,9-Dibromononane (63.7 mg, 0.22 mmol, 0.5 equiv) was added to the mixture of monomer 7 (0.2 g, 0.44 mmol, 1.0 equiv) potassium carbonate (0.98 mmol, 2.2 equiv) and a catalytic amount of potassium iodide in dry DMF (30mL), and the resulting mixture was heated to 90°C under a nitrogen atmosphere for 5 h. Removal of excess solvent under reduced pressure afforded a crude solid, which was subjected to flash column chromatography (SiO<sub>2</sub>, 50%EtOAc-hexane) to afford the dimerized compound **8g** (181 mg, 0.17 mmol, 15 79% yield, mixture of diastereomers from THP protecting group) as a solid: [α]<sup>20</sup><sub>D</sub> = +56° (c = 0.16, CHCl<sub>3</sub>); <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, 400 MHz): δ 1.27-1.66 (m, 72H, 14-H, 15-H, 16-H, Boc, THP), 1.68-1.92 (16H, 13-H, THP), 1.93-2.20 (m, 16H, 1-H, 2-H), 3.45-3.75 (m, 16H, 3-H, 11*a*-H, THP), 3.83-4.14 (m, 24H, 12-H, 7-OMe, THP), 5.02-5.10 (m, 2H, THP), 5.12-5.19 (m, 2H, THP), 5.69-5.77 (d, 2H, 11-H), 5.79-5.89 (d, 2H, 11-H), 6.51 (s, 2H, 9-H), 6.87 (s, 2H, 9-H), 7.19 (s, 2H, 6-H), 7.22 (s, 2H, 6-H); <sup>13</sup>C NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, 400 MHz): δ 19.8, 20.4, 23.1, 23.2, 25.2, 25.3, 25.9, 28.1, 28.2, 28.9, 29.0, 29.1, 29.2, 29.3, 29.4, 30.9, 31.2, 46.2, 55.9, 56.2, 60.0, 60.1, 63.3, 64.4, 69.0, 69.1, 80.9, 81.2, 88.2, 91.2, 95.8, 100.2, 111.1, 111.5, 113.4, 114.0, 120.5, 129.6, 138.2, 147.8, 148.1, 151.2, 151.5, 161.9, 167.4, 167.6; IR (neat): 2938, 1703, 1643, 1604, 1513, 1449, 1392, 1327, 1217, 1163, 1022cm<sup>-1</sup>; MS (FAB) m/z (relative intensity) 1043 ([M + Na]<sup>+</sup>, 21), 1021 (M<sup>+</sup>, 100), 819 (20), 919 (16).

(b) 1,1'-(*Nonane-1,9-diyl*)dioxy]bis[(11a*S*)-8-methoxy-1,2,3,11a-tetrahydro-5H-pyrrolo[2,1-*c*][1,4]benzodiazepine-5-one] (**9g**)  
95% TFA (3 mL) was added drop-wise to dimer compound **8g** (170 mg, 0.18 mmol) at 0°C. This was then stirred for 1hr and the mixture  
5 was poured into saturated NaHCO<sub>3</sub> (30 mL) solution to naturalize the reaction mixture. The mixture was extracted with chloroform (3x20 mL). The organic layer was then washed water (20 mL), brine (20 mL) then dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>) and filtrated. The excess solvent was removed under reduced pressure to give the crude product, which  
10 was subjected to flash column chromatography (SiO<sub>2</sub>, 2%methanol-chloroform). Removal of excess eluent under reduced pressure without heating afforded the final product **9g** (93 mg, 0.15 mmol, 88%) as a solid: [α]<sup>20</sup><sub>D</sub> = +547° (c = 0.13, CHCl<sub>3</sub>); <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, 400 MHz): δ 1.31-1.53 (m, 10H, 14-H, 14'-H, 15-H, 15'-H, 16-H), 1.83-1.94 (m, 4H, 13-H, 13'-H), 2.00-2.12 (m, 4H, 2-H, 2'-H), 2.27-2.38 (m, 4H, 1-H, 1'-H), 3.54-3.64 (m, 2H, 3-H, 3'-H), 3.69-3.78 (m, 2H, 11a-H, 11a'-H), 3.79-3.87 (m, 2H, 3-H, 3'-H), 3.92 (s, 6H, 7-OMe, 7'-OMe), 4.01-4.19 (m, 4H, 12-H, 12'-H), 6.81 (s, 2H, 9-H, 9'-H), 7.52 (s, 2H, 6-H, 6'-H), 7.67 (d, 2H, J = 4, 11-H, 11'-H);  
15 <sup>13</sup>C NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, 400 MHz): δ 24.1, 25.9, 29.0, 29.3, 29.4, 29.6, 46.6, 53.7, 56.0, 69.1, 109.6, 112.5, 120.2, 140.5, 147.1, 151.6, 162.2, 164.6; IR (neat): 3325, 2933, 1600, 1507, 1448, 1388, 1261, 1217, 1092, 1024cm<sup>-1</sup>; MS (FAB) m/z (relative intensity) 617 (M<sup>+</sup>, 100), 635 (10), 785 (6).

25

**Example 9 (n=10)**

(a) 1,1'-(*Decane-1,10-diyl*)dioxy]bis[(11*S*,11a*S*)-10-(*tert*-butyloxycarbonyl)-8-methoxy-11-(tetrahydro-pyran-2-yloxy)-1,2,3,10,11,11a-hexahydro-5H-pyrrolo[2,1-*c*][1,4]benzodiazepine-5-one] (**8h**)

1,10-Diododecane (87.8 mg, 0.22 mmol, 0.5 equiv) was added to the mixture of monomer **7** (0.2 g, 0.44 mmol, 1.0 equiv) and potassium carbonate (0.98 mmol, 2.2 equiv) in dry DMF (30 mL), and the resulting mixture was heated to 90°C under a nitrogen atmosphere  
30 for 5 h. Removal of excess solvent under reduced pressure afforded a crude solid, which was subjected to flash column chromatography

( $\text{SiO}_2$ , 50%EtOAc-hexane) to afford the dimerized compound **8h** (191 mg, 0.18 mmol, 82% yield, mixture of diastereomers from THP protecting group) as a solid:  $[\alpha]^{20}_{\text{D}} = +75^\circ$  ( $c = 0.10$ ,  $\text{CHCl}_3$ );  $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ , 400 MHz):  $\delta$  1.25-1.59 (m, 76H, 14-H, 15-H, 16-H, Boc, THP), 1.68-1.92 (16H, 13-H, THP), 1.93-2.20 (m, 16H, 1-H, 2-H), 3.45-3.75 (m, 16H, 3-H, 11a-H, THP), 3.83-4.14 (m, 24H, 12-H, 7-OMe, THP), 5.02-5.10 (m, 2H, THP), 5.12-5.19 (m, 2H, THP), 5.69-5.77 (d, 2H, 11-H), 5.79-5.89 (d, 2H, 11-H), 6.49 (s, 2H, 9-H), 6.86 (s, 2H, 9-H), 7.17 (s, 2H, 6-H), 7.21 (s, 2H, 6-H);  $^{13}\text{C}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ , 400 MHz):  $\delta$  19.9, 20.4, 23.1, 23.2, 25.2, 25.3, 25.9, 28.1, 28.2, 28.9, 29.0, 29.1, 29.2, 29.3, 29.5, 30.9, 31.3, 46.3, 55.9, 56.2, 60.0, 60.1, 63.3, 69.1, 80.9, 81.2, 88.2, 91.2, 95.8, 100.2, 111.1, 111.5, 113.4, 114.0, 121.6, 126.4, 141.0, 143.1, 148.1, 148.4, 155.4, 167.4, 167.6; IR (neat): 2937, 1703, 1643, 1604, 1513, 1450, 1392, 1327, 1218, 1164, 1022  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ ; MS (FAB)  $m/z$  (relative intensity) 1057 ( $[M + \text{Na}]^+$ , 34), 1035 ( $M^+$ , 100), 833 (26), 933 (25).

(b) 1,1'-(Decane-1,10-diyl)dioxybis[(11aS)-8-methoxy-1,2,3,11a-tetrahydro-5H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepine-5-one] (**9h**)

95% TFA (3 mL) was added drop-wise to dimer compound **8h** (191 mg, 0.18 mmol) at 0°C. This was then stirred for 1hr and the mixture was poured into saturated  $\text{NaHCO}_3$  (30 mL) solution to neutralize the reaction mixture. The mixture was extracted with chloroform (3x20 mL). The organic layer was then washed water (20 mL), brine (20 mL) then dried ( $\text{MgSO}_4$ ) and filtrated. The excess solvent was removed under reduced pressure to give the crude product, which was subjected to flash column chromatography ( $\text{SiO}_2$ , 2%methanol-chloroform). Removal of excess eluent under reduced pressure without heating afforded the final product **9h** (103 mg, 0.16 mmol, 90%) as a solid:  $[\alpha]^{20}_{\text{D}} = +387^\circ$  ( $c = 0.17$ ,  $\text{CHCl}_3$ );  $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ , 400 MHz):  $\delta$  1.25-1.50 (m, 12H, 14-H, 14'-H, 15-H, 15'-H, 16-H, 16'-H), 1.72-1.92 (m, 4H, 13-H, 13'-H), 1.98-2.09 (m, 4H, 2-H, 2'-H), 2.25-2.38 (m, 4H, 1-H, 1'-H), 3.52-3.62 (m, 2H, 3-H, 3'-H), 3.68-3.73 (m, 2H, 11a-H, 11a'-H), 3.76-3.85 (m, 2H, 3-H, 3'-H), 3.90 (s, 6H, 7-OMe, 7'-OMe), 3.95-4.19 (m, 4H, 12-H, 12'-H), 6.79 (s,

2H, 9-H, 9'-H), 7.50 (s, 2H, 6-H, 6'-H), 7.64 (d, 2H,  $J$  = 4, 11-H, 11'-H);  $^{13}\text{C}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ , 400 MHz):  $\delta$  24.1, 25.9, 29.0, 29.3, 29.4, 29.6, 46.6, 53.7, 56.0, 69.7, 109.6, 112.5, 120.2, 140.5, 147.1, 151.6, 162.2, 164.6; IR (neat): 3325, 2931, 1600, 1506, 1448, 1388, 1262, 1217, 1092,  $1024\text{cm}^{-1}$ ; MS (FAB)  $m/z$  (relative intensity) 695 ( $[M + 2 \times \text{MeOH}]^{+·}$ , 14), 663 ( $[M + \text{MeOH}]^{+·}$ , 20), 631 ( $M^{+·}$ , 100).

**Example 10 (n=11)**

(a) *1,1'-(Undecane-1,11-diyl)dioxy]bis[(11*S*,11*a**S*)-10-(tert-butyloxycarbonyl)-8-methoxy-11-(tetrahydro-pyran-2-yloxy)-1,2,3,10,11,11*a*-hexahydro-5*H*-pyrrolo[2,1-*c*][1,4]benzodiazepine-5-one] (8i)*

1,11-Dibromoundecane (70.0 mg, 0.22 mmol, 0.5 equiv) was added to the mixture of monomer 7 (0.2 g, 0.44 mmol, 1.0 equiv) potassium carbonate (0.98 mmol, 2.2 equiv) and a catalytic amount of potassium iodide in dry DMF (30 mL), and the resulting mixture was heated to 90°C under a nitrogen atmosphere for 5 h. Removal of excess solvent under reduced pressure afforded a crude solid, which was subjected to flash column chromatography ( $\text{SiO}_2$ , 50%EtOAc-hexane) to afford the dimerized compound 8i (217 mg, 0.20 mmol, 94% yield, mixture of diastereomers from THP protecting group) as a solid:  $[\alpha]^{20}_{\text{D}} = +52^\circ$  ( $c = 0.17$ ,  $\text{CHCl}_3$ );  $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ , 400 MHz):  $\delta$  1.27-1.60 (m, 80H, 14-H, 15-H, 16-H, 17-H, Boc, THP), 1.71-1.89 (16H, 13-H, THP), 1.93-2.20 (m, 16H, 1-H, 2-H), 3.45-3.75 (m, 16H, 3-H, 11*a*-H, THP), 3.83-4.14 (m, 24H, 12-H, 7-OMe, THP), 5.02-5.10 (m, 2H, THP), 5.12-5.19 (m, 2H, THP), 5.69-5.77 (d, 2H, 11-H), 5.79-5.89 (d, 2H, 11-H), 6.51 (s, 2H, 9-H), 6.87 (s, 2H, 9-H), 7.19 (s, 2H, 6-H), 7.22 (s, 2H, 6-H);  $^{13}\text{C}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ , 400 MHz):  $\delta$  19.9, 20.4, 23.1, 23.2, 25.3, 25.9, 28.1, 28.2, 28.9, 29.0, 29.1, 29.2, 29.3, 29.5, 30.9, 31.2, 46.3, 55.9, 56.2, 60.0, 60.1, 63.3, 64.4, 69.1, 80.9, 81.2, 88.2, 91.2, 95.8, 100.2, 111.1, 111.5, 113.4, 114.0, 126.3, 129.6, 134.1, 138.8, 148.0, 148.4, 155.3, 155.6, 167.4, 167.6; IR (neat): 2935, 1704, 1643, 1604, 1513, 1449, 1392, 1327, 1218, 1164,  $1022\text{cm}^{-1}$ ; MS (FAB)  $m/z$  (relative intensity) 1071 ( $[M + \text{Na}]^{+·}$ , 16), 1049 ( $M^{+·}$ , 100), 947 (15), 847 (13).

(b) *1,1'-[(Undecane-1,11-diyl)dioxy]bis[(11aS)-8-methoxy-1,2,3,11a-tetrahydro-5H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepine-5-one]* (9i)

5 95% TFA (3 mL) was added drop-wise to dimer compound **8i** (217 mg, 0.20 mmol) at 0°C. This was then stirred for 1hr and the mixture was poured into saturated NaHCO<sub>3</sub> (30 mL) solution to naturalize the reaction mixture. The mixture was extracted with chloroform (3x20 mL). The organic layer was then washed water (20 mL), brine (20 mL) then dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>) and filtrated. The excess solvent was removed under reduced pressure to give the crude product, which was subjected to flash column chromatography (SiO<sub>2</sub>, 2%methanol-chloroform). Removal of excess eluent under reduced pressure without heating afforded the final product **9i** (113 mg, 0.17 mmol, 10 87%) as a solid: [α]<sup>20</sup><sub>D</sub> = +401° (c = 0.19, CHCl<sub>3</sub>); <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, 400 MHz): δ 1.26-1.52 (m, 14H, 14-H, 14'-H, 15-H, 15'-H, 16-H, 16'-H, 17-H), 1.84-1.92 (m, 4H, 13-H, 13'-H), 2.01-2.11 (m, 4H, 2-H, 2'-H), 2.27-2.36 (m, 4H, 1-H, 1'-H), 3.55-3.64 (m, 2H, 3-H, 3'-H), 3.70-3.76 (m, 2H, 11a-H, 11a'-H), 3.78-3.87 (m, 2H, 3-H, 3'-H), 3.92 (s, 6H, 7-OMe, 7'-OMe), 4.02-4.20 (m, 4H, 12-H, 12'-H), 6.81 (s, 2H, 9-H, 9'-H), 7.52 (s, 2H, 6-H, 6'-H), 7.67 (d, 2H, J = 4, 11-H, 11'-H); <sup>13</sup>C NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, 400 MHz): δ 24.1, 25.9, 29.0, 29.3, 29.5, 29.6, 46.6, 53.7, 56.0, 69.1, 109.6, 112.5, 120.2, 140.5, 147.1, 151.6, 162.2, 164.6; IR (neat): 3325, 2928, 1600, 1507, 25 1448, 1261, 1217, 1023cm<sup>-1</sup>; MS (FAB) m/z (relative intensity) 709 ([M + 2 x MeOH]<sup>+</sup>, 14), 677 ([M + MeOH]<sup>+</sup>, 20), 645 (M<sup>+</sup>, 100).

**Example 11 (n=12)**

(a) *1,1'-[(Dodecane-1,12-diyl)dioxy]bis[(11S,11aS)-10-(tert-butyloxycarbonyl)-8-methoxy-11-(tetrahydro-pyran-2-yloxy)-1,2,3,10,11,11a-hexahydro-5H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepine-5-one]* (**8j**)

30 1,12-Dibromododecane (73.1 mg, 0.22 mmol, 0.5 equiv) was added to the mixture of monomer **7** (0.2 g, 0.44 mmol, 1.0 equiv) potassium carbonate (0.98 mmol, 2.2 equiv) and a catalytic amount of 35 potassium iodide in dry DMF (30 mL), and the resulting mixture was

heated to 90°C under a nitrogen atmosphere for 5 h. Removal of excess solvent under reduced pressure afforded a crude solid, which was subjected to flash column chromatography (SiO<sub>2</sub>, 50%EtOAc-hexane) to afford the dimerized compound **8j** (208 mg, 0.19 mmol, 5 87% yield, mixture of diastereomers from THP protecting group) as a solid: [α]<sup>20</sup><sub>D</sub> = +50° (c = 0.20, CHCl<sub>3</sub>); <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, 400 MHz): δ 1.26-1.68 (m, 84H, 14-H, 15-H, 16-H, 17-H, Boc, THP), 1.69-1.89 (16H, 13-H, THP), 1.93-2.20 (m, 16H, 1-H, 2-H), 3.44-3.75 (m, 16H, 3-H, 11a-H, THP), 3.83-4.14 (m, 24H, 12-H, 7-OMe, THP), 5.02-5.10 (m, 2H, THP), 5.12-5.19 (m, 2H, THP), 5.69-5.77 (d, 2H, 11-H), 10 5.79-5.89 (d, 2H, 11-H), 6.50 (s, 2H, 9-H), 6.87 (s, 2H, 9-H), 7.19 (s, 2H, 6-H), 7.22 (s, 2H, 6-H); <sup>13</sup>C NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, 400 MHz): δ 19.9, 20.4, 23.1, 23.2, 25.2, 25.3, 25.9, 28.1, 28.2, 28.9, 29.0, 29.1, 29.2, 29.3, 29.56, 29.58, 30.9, 31.2, 46.2, 55.9, 56.2, 15 60.0, 60.1, 63.3, 64.4, 69.12, 69.15, 80.9, 81.2, 88.2, 91.2, 95.8, 100.2, 111.1, 111.5, 113.4, 114.0, 126.3, 129.6, 134.1, 138.8, 147.8, 148.1, 151.5, 155.3, 167.4, 167.6; IR (neat): 2932, 1703, 1643, 1604, 1513, 1450, 1392, 1327, 1218, 1164, 1022cm<sup>-1</sup>; MS (FAB) m/z (relative intensity) 1085 ([M + Na]<sup>+</sup>, 28), 1063 (M<sup>+</sup>, 20 100), 961 (17), 861 (13).

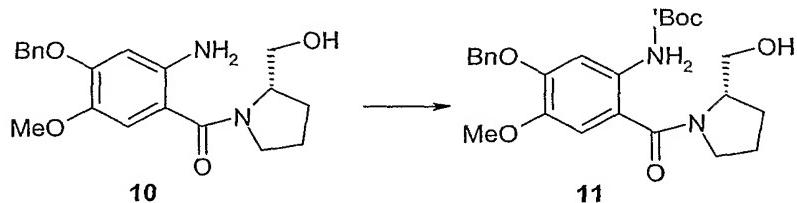
(b) 1,1'-(Dodecane-1,12-diyl)dioxybis[(11aS)-8-methoxy-1,2,3,11a-tetrahydro-5H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepine-5-one] (9j)

25 95% TFA (3 mL) was added drop-wise to dimer compound **8j** (208 mg, 0.19 mmol) at 0°C. This was then stirred for 1hr and the mixture was poured into saturated NaHCO<sub>3</sub> (30 mL) solution to naturalize the reaction mixture. The mixture was extracted with chloroform (3x20 mL). The organic layer was then washed water (20 mL), brine (20 mL) then dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>) and filtrated. The excess solvent was removed under reduced pressure to give the crude product, which was subjected to flash column chromatography (SiO<sub>2</sub>, 2%methanol-chloroform). Removal of excess eluent under reduced pressure without heating afforded the final product **9j** (107 mg, 0.16 mmol, 30 85%) as a solid: [α]<sup>20</sup><sub>D</sub> = +506° (c = 0.15, CHCl<sub>3</sub>); <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, 400 MHz): δ 1.26-1.52 (m, 16H, 14-H, 14'-H, 15-H, 15'-H, 16-H, 16'-H,

17-H, 17'-H), 1.83-1.92 (m, 4H, 13-H, 13'-H), 2.01-2.12 (m, 4H, 2-H, 2'-H), 2.28-2.37 (m, 4H, 1-H, 1'-H), 3.55-3.64 (m, 2H, 3-H, 3'-H), 3.70-3.77 (m, 2H, 11a-H, 11a'-H), 3.78-3.87 (m, 2H, 3-H, 3'-H), 3.92 (s, 6H, 7-OMe, 7'-OMe), 4.03-4.19 (m, 4H, 12-H, 12'-H),  
5 6.81 (s, 2H, 9-H, 9'-H), 7.52 (s, 2H, 6-H, 6'-H), 7.67 (d, 2H,  $J$  = 4, 11-H, 11'-H);  $^{13}\text{C}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ , 400 MHz):  $\delta$  24.1, 25.9, 29.0, 29.3, 29.54, 29.57, 29.6, 46.6, 53.7, 56.0, 69.1, 109.6, 112.5, 120.2, 140.5, 147.1, 151.6, 162.2, 164.6, ; IR (neat): 3338, 2926, 1600, 1507, 1448, 1261, 1217,  $1024\text{cm}^{-1}$ ; MS (FAB)  $m/z$  (relative intensity) 723 ([ $M + 2 \times \text{MeOH}$ ] $^{+ \cdot}$ , 14), 691 ([ $M + \text{MeOH}$ ] $^{+ \cdot}$ , 20), 659 ( $M^{+ \cdot}$ , 100).

Example 12 - Synthesis of PBD monomer - (11*S*,11*a**S*)-8-Hydroxy-10-(tert-butyloxycarbonyl)-7-methoxy-11-(tetrahydroxy-pyran-2-yloxy)-1,2,3,10,11,11*a*-hexahydro-5*H*-pyrrolo[2,1-*c*][1,4]benzodiazepine-5-one (14)

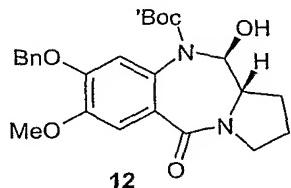
(a) *N*-[4-Benzyl-5-methoxy-2-(tert-butyloxycarbonylamino)benzoyl]-pyrrolidine-2-methanol (11)



20 A solution of amine **10** (8 g, 22.47 mmol, 1.0 equiv) and Di-*tert*-butyl dicarbonate (7.35 g, 33.70 mmol, 1.5 equiv) in THF (150 mL) was heated at reflux overnight. The reaction mixture was allowed to cool to RT and excess THF was removed under reduced pressure to give the crude product. The residue was subjected to flash column chromatography ( $\text{SiO}_2$ , 30% EtOAc-hexane) to afford the product **11** (6.2 g, 13.59 mmol, 60%) as yellow oil:  $[\alpha]^{20}_{\text{D}} = -95^\circ$  ( $c = 0.17$ ,  $\text{CHCl}_3$ );  $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ , 400 MHz):  $\delta$  1.50 (s, 9H, Boc), 1.64-1.80 (m, 2H, 1-H, 2-H), 1.86-1.95 (m, 1H, 2-H), 2.14-2.23 (m, 1H, 1-H), 3.46-3.54 (m, 1H, 3-H), 3.56-3.64 (m, 1H, 3-H), 3.67-3.77 (m, 1H, 11-H), 3.81-3.89 (m, 4H, 11-H, 7-OMe), 4.29-4.48 (m, 2H, 11a-H, OH), 5.14 (m, 2H, OBN), 6.82 (s, 1H, 6-H), 7.29-7.33 (m, 1H, Ph), 7.34-7.39 (m, 2H, Ph), 7.46-7.49 (m, 2H, Ph), 7.89 (s, 1H, 9-H),

8.38 (br s, 1H, NH);  $^{13}\text{C}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ , 400 MHz):  $\delta$  21.8, 28.3, 28.4, 52.4, 57.5, 61.8, 67.5, 71.5, 81.1, 107.0, 112.6, 128.3, 128.6, 128.8, 129.2, 133.2, 137.1, 144.7, 151.3, 153.9, 171.9; IR (neat):  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ ; MS (FAB)  $m/z$  (relative intensity) 479 ( $[M + \text{Na}]^+$ , 20), 457 ( $M^+$ , 100), 357 (25), 255 (23), 401 (21).

(b) *(11S,11aS)-8-Benzylxyloxy-10-(tert-butyloxycarbonyl)-11-hydroxy-7-methoxy-1,2,3,10,11,11a-hexahydro-5H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepine-5-one (12)*

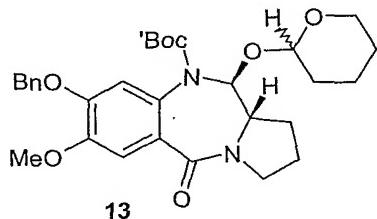


10

To a solution of Boc protected amine alcohol **11** (6.2 g, 13.59 mmol, 1.0 equiv) in DCM (50 mL), BAIB (4.82 g, 14.95 mmol, 1.0 equiv) and TEMPO (0.21 g, 1.35 mmol, 0.1 equiv) were added and the mixture was stirred overnight. When the reaction was complete as indicated by TLC ( $\text{SiO}_2$ , 50% EtOAc-hexane), the reaction mixture was diluted with DCM (100 mL) and washed with saturated  $\text{Na}_2\text{S}_2\text{O}_3$  (60 mL). The aqueous layer was extracted with DCM (2x50 mL) and the combined organic layer was washed with brine (50 mL) and dried ( $\text{MgSO}_4$ ). Removal of excess solvent under reduced pressure afforded a crude solid which was washed with cold EtOAc to give cyclized PBD **12** (4.9 g, 10.8 mmol, 79%) as white solid:  $[\alpha]^{20}_{\text{D}} = +136^\circ$  ( $c = 0.190$ ,  $\text{CHCl}_3$ );  $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ , 400 MHz):  $\delta$  1.28 (s, 9H, Boc), 1.95–2.18 (m, 4H, 1-H, 2-H), 3.43–3.50 (m, 1H, 11a-H), 3.53–3.66 (m, 2H, 3-H, OH), 3.67–3.78 (m, 1H, 3-H), 3.95 (s, 3H, 7-OMe), 5.10 (d, 1H,  $J = 12$  Hz, OBn), 5.22 (d, 1H,  $J = 12$  Hz, OBn), 5.51–5.59 (m, 1H, 11-H), 6.66 (s, 1H, 9-H), 7.26 (s, 1H, 6-H), 7.33–7.34 (m, 1H, Ph), 7.38–7.41 (m, 2H, Ph), 7.41–7.45 (m, 2H, Ph);  $^{13}\text{C}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ , 400 MHz):  $\delta$  23.0, 28.1, 28.7, 46.3, 56.1, 59.7, 71.1, 81.6, 85.6, 110.7, 114.6, 126.0, 127.0, 128.1, 128.7, 129.1, 130.2, 136.4, 148.5, 149.8, 155.4, 167.0; IR (neat): 3374, 2974, 1699, 1623, 1602, 1511, 1454, 1433, 1324, 1161, 1050  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ ; MS (FAB)  $m/z$

(relative intensity) 477 ( $[M + Na]^+$ , 25), 455 ( $M^{+}$ , 100), 399 (94), 337 (60), 437 (45).

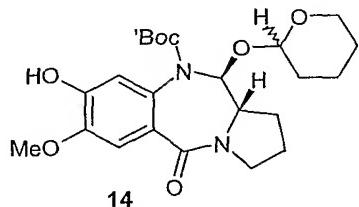
5 (c) *(11S,11aS)-8-Benzylxy-10-(tert-butyloxycarbonyl)-7-methoxy-11-(tetrahydroxy-pyran-2-yloxy)-1,2,3,10,11,11a-hexahydro-5H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepine-5-one (13)*



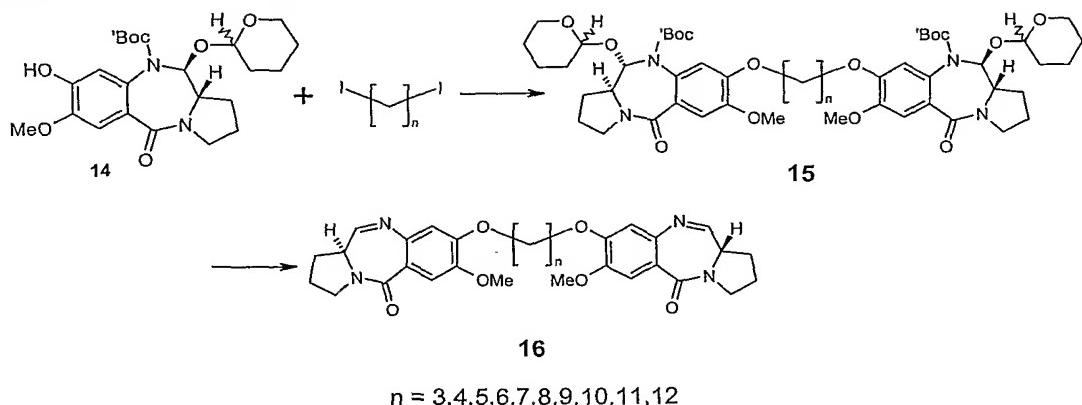
A catalytic amount of PTSA was added to a solution of DHP (2.87 g, 34.14 mmol, 5 equiv) in EtOAc (10 mL) at 0°C. After stirring 10 minutes, the cyclized compound 12 (3.1 g, 6.8 mmol, 1.0 equiv) was added portion-wise to the mixture and the resulting mixture was stirred until starting material disappearance by TLC ( $\text{SiO}_2$ , 50% EtOAc-hexane). The mixture was diluted with EtOAc (100 mL), washed with saturated  $\text{NaHCO}_3$  (30 mL), brine (30 mL) and dried ( $\text{MgSO}_4$ ). Removal of excess solvent afforded the protected compound 13 (3.5 g, 6.5 mmol, 95% yield, mixture of diastereomers from THP protecting group), which was used in the subsequent reaction without further purification:  $[\alpha]^{20}_{\text{D}} = +64^\circ$  ( $c = 0.58, \text{CHCl}_3$ );  $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ , 400 MHz):  $\delta$  1.12-1.80 (m, 30H, Boc, THP), 1.90-2.14 (m, 8H, 1-H, 2-H), 3.39-3.70 (m, 8H, 3-H, 11a-H, THP), 3.81-3.99 (m, 8H, 7-OMe, THP), 4.89-4.94 (m, 1H, THP), 5.05-5.26 (m, 5H, OBn, THP), 5.65-5.70 (d, 1H, 11-H), 5.74-5.81 (d, 1H, 11-H), 6.49 (s, 1H, 9-H), 6.88 (s, 1H, 9-H), 7.20-7.36 (m, 12H, 6-H, Ph);  $^{13}\text{C}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ , 400 MHz):  $\delta$  18.8, 19.6, 22.0, 22.2, 24.21, 24.25, 26.9, 27.0, 27.8, 28.0, 29.7, 30.2, 45.2, 55.06, 55.09, 58.95, 59.1, 62.2, 63.5, 69.9, 70.3, 79.8, 87.0, 90.2, 94.5, 99.5, 109.1, 109.6, 114.5, 114.7, 125.8, 126.93, 126.99, 127.65, 127.69, 128.7, 135.6, 135.7, 147.6, 147.9, 149.0, 149.1, 153.8, 166.3, 166.5; IR (neat): 3410, 2945, 2873, 1704, 1643, 1604, 1511, 1454, 1431, 1402, 1326, 1272, 1202, 1163, 1116, 1022  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ ; MS (FAB)  $m/z$

(relative intensity) 561 ( $[M + Na]^{+}$ , 57), 539 ( $M^{+}$ , 78), 337 (100), 540 (27), 338 (24).

5 (d) *(11S,11aS)-8-Hydroxy-10-(tert-butyloxycarbonyl)-7-methoxy-11-(tetrahydroxy-pyran-2-yloxy)-1,2,3,10,11,11a-hexahydro-5H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepine-5-one (14)*



A catalytic amount of 10% palladium on carbon (380 mg) was added to a solution of THP protected compound 13 (3.8 g, 7 mmol) in absolute alcohol (30 mL). The reaction mixture was hydrogenated for 3h at 35 Psi. When the reaction was complete as indicated by TLC ( $SiO_2$ , 50% EtOAc-hexane) the reaction mixture was filtered through Celite, and removal of excess solvent under reduced pressure afforded the phenol 14 (2.8 g, 6.25 mmol, 90% yield, mixture of diastereomers from THP protecting group) as a white solid:  $[\alpha]^{20}_D = +84^\circ$  ( $c = 0.48$ ,  $CHCl_3^1H$  NMR ( $CDCl_3$ , 400 MHz):  $\delta$  1.35 (s, 18H, Boc), 1.48-1.68 (m, 6H, THP), 1.69-1.88 (m, 6H, THP), 1.91-2.18 (m, 8H, 1-H, 2-H), 3.44-3.75 (m, 8H, 3-H, 11a-H, THP), 3.84-4.02 (m, 8H, 7-OMe, THP), 4.96-5.09 (m, 1H, THP), 5.10-5.18 (m, 1H, THP), 5.69-5.76 (d, 1H, 11-H), 5.77-5.87 (d, 1H, 11-H), 6.03 (s, 1H, OH), 6.14 (s, 1H, OH), 6.49 (s, 1H, 9-H), 6.86 (s, 1H, 9-H), 7.28 (s, 1H, 6-H), 7.32 (s, 1H, 6-H);  $^{13}C$  NMR ( $CDCl_3$ , 400 MHz):  $\delta$  19.9, 20.7, 23.1, 23.2, 25.1, 25.3, 28.0, 28.1, 28.9, 29.1, 30.8, 31.2, 46.3, 56.13, 56.19, 60.0, 60.2, 63.4, 64.5, 81.0, 81.1, 87.9, 91.1, 95.8, 100.7, 109.6, 110.0, 116.4, 117.0, 125.5, 125.9, 130.2, 130.5, 145.7, 145.8, 147.4, 147.5, 154.9, 155.3, 167.4, 167.6; IR (neat): 3266, 2947, 1703, 1631, 1612, 1514, 1468, 1411, 1368, 1331, 1275, 1201, 1163, 1116, 1023  $cm^{-1}$ ; MS (FAB)  $m/z$  (relative intensity) 471 ( $[M + Na]^{+}$ , 15), 449 ( $M^{+}$ , 99), 246 (100), 347 (25).

**Examples 13-22: Synthesis of PBD dimers linked at the C-8 position****Example 13 (n=3)**

(a) *1,1'-[ (Propane-1,3-diyl) dioxy] bis[(11*S*,11*a**S*)-10-(tert-butylloxycarbonyl)-7-methoxy-11-(tetrahydro-pyran-2-yloxy)-1,2,3,10,11,11*a*-hexahydro-5*H*-pyrrolo[2,1-*c*][1,4]benzodiazepine-5-one] (15a)*

1,3-Diiodopropane (66 mg, 0.22 mmol, 0.5 equiv) was added to the mixture of monomer 14 (0.2 g, 0.44 mmol, 1.0 equiv) and potassium carbonate (0.98 mmol, 2.2 equiv) in dry DMF (30 mL), and the resulting mixture was heated to 90°C under a nitrogen atmosphere for 5 h. Removal of excess solvent under reduced pressure afforded a crude solid, which was subjected to flash column chromatography ( $\text{SiO}_2$ , 50% EtoAc-hexane) to afford the dimerized compound 15a (90 mg, 0.09 mmol, 43% yield, mixture of diastereomers from THP protecting group) as a solid:  $[\alpha]^{20}_{\text{D}} = +57^\circ$  ( $c = 0.14$ ,  $\text{CHCl}_3$ );  $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ , 400 MHz):  $\delta$  1.20-1.84 (m, 60H, Boc, THP), 1.91-2.20 (m, 16H, 1-H, 2-H), 2.34-2.46 (m, 4H, 13-H), 3.40-3.74 (m, 16H, 3-H, 11a-H, THP), 3.79-3.99 (m, 16H, 7-OMe, THP), 4.12-4.30 (m, 8H, 12-H), 4.97-5.15 (m, 4H, THP), 5.66-5.75 (d, 2H, 11-H), 5.77-5.89 (d, 2H, 11-H), 6.55 (s, 2H, 9-H), 6.89 (s, 2H, 9-H), 7.16 (s, 2H, 6-H), 7.20 (s, 2H, 6-H);  $^{13}\text{C}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ , 400 MHz):  $\delta$  19.9, 20.5, 23.1, 23.2, 25.2, 25.3, 28.1, 28.2, 28.9, 29.0, 29.1, 30.9, 31.3, 46.3, 56.0, 56.1, 60.0, 60.2, 63.4, 64.5, 65.3, 65.7, 81.0, 81.1, 88.1, 91.2, 95.7, 100.3, 110.1, 110.8, 114.7, 115.2, 127.5, 129.8, 148.5, 148.8, 150.0, 155.1, 167.4, 167.6; IR (neat): 3426, 2943, 1703, 1643, 1604, 1513, 1454, 1432, 1326, 1270, 1201, 1163, 1023  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ .

<sup>1</sup>; MS (FAB) *m/z* (relative intensity) 959 ([*M* + Na]<sup>+</sup>, 100), 937 (*M*<sup>+</sup>, 62), 835 (67), 735 (60).

(b) 1,1'-[(Propane-1,3-diyl)dioxy]bis[(11a*S*)-7-methoxy-1,2,3,11*a*-tetrahydro-5*H*-pyrrolo[2,1-*c*][1,4]benzodiazepine-5-one] (16a)

95% TFA (3 mL) was added drop-wise to dimer compound 15a (75 mg, 0.08 mmol) at 0°C. This was then stirred for 1h and the mixture was poured into saturated NaHCO<sub>3</sub> (30 mL) solution to naturalize the reaction mixture. The mixture was extracted with chloroform (3x20 mL). The organic layer was then washed water (20 mL), brine (20 mL) then dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>) and filtrated. The excess solvent was removed under reduced pressure to give the crude product, which was subjected to flash column chromatography (SiO<sub>2</sub>, 2%methanol-chloroform). Removal of excess eluent under reduced pressure without heating afforded the final product 16a (30 mg, 0.05 mmol, 70%) as a solid: [α]<sup>20</sup><sub>D</sub> = +477° (c = 0.11, CHCl<sub>3</sub>); <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, 400 MHz): δ 2.01-2.06 (m, 4H, 2-H, 2'-H), 2.28-2.31 (m, 4H, 1-H, 1'-H), 2.39-2.42 (m, 2H, 13-H), 3.55-3.60 (m, 2H, 3-H, 3'-H), 3.67-3.73 (m, 2H, 11a-H, 11a'-H), 3.77-3.87 (m, 2H, 3-H, 3'-H), 3.91 (s, 6H, 7-OMe, 7'-OMe), 4.23-4.31 (m, 4H, 12-H, 12'-H), 6.84 (s, 2H, 9-H, 9'-H), 7.50 (s, 2H, 6-H, 6'-H), 7.64 (d, 2H, J = 4, 11-H, 11'-H); <sup>13</sup>C NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, 400 MHz): δ 24.1, 28.4, 29.6, 46.6, 53.6, 56.1, 58.4, 65.4, 110.8, 111.6, 120.4, 140.6, 147.8, 150.6, 162.3, 164.6; IR (neat): 3350, 2951, 1600, 1505, 1434, 1262, 1217, 1021cm<sup>-1</sup>; MS (FAB) *m/z* (relative intensity) 597 ([*M* + 2 x MeOH]<sup>+</sup>, 16), 565 ([*M* + MeOH]<sup>+</sup>, 5), 533 (*M*<sup>+</sup>, 100).

**Example 14 (n=4)**

(a) 1,1'-[(Butane-1,4-diyl)dioxy]bis[(11*S*,11*aS*)-10-(tert-butyloxycarbonyl)-7-methoxy-11-(tetrahydro-pyran-2-yloxy)-1,2,3,10,11,11*a*-hexahydro-5*H*-pyrrolo[2,1-*c*][1,4]benzodiazepine-5-one] (15b)

1,4-Diodobutane (69.1 mg, 0.22 mmol, 0.5 equiv) was added to the mixture of monomer 14 (0.2 g, 0.44mmol, 1.0 equiv) and potassium carbonate (0.98 mmol, 2.2 equiv) in dry DMF (30mL), and the resulting mixture was heated to 90°C under a nitrogen atmosphere

for 5 h. Removal of excess solvent under reduced pressure afforded a crude solid, which was subjected to flash column chromatography ( $\text{SiO}_2$ , 50%EtOAc-hexane) to afford the dimerized compound **15b** (210 mg, 0.22 mmol, 99% yield, mixture of diastereomers from THP protecting group) as a solid:  $[\alpha]^{20}_D = -11^\circ$  ( $c = 0.18, \text{CHCl}_3$ );  $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ , 400 MHz):  $\delta$  1.21-1.87 (m, 60H, Boc, THP), 1.94-2.21 (m, 24H, 1-H, 2-H, 13-H), 3.43-3.77 (m, 16H, 3-H, 11a-H, THP), 3.86-4.01 (m, 16H, 7-OMe, THP), 4.02-4.19 (m, 8H, 12-H), 4.97-5.15 (m, 4H, THP), 5.66-5.75 (d, 2H, 11-H), 5.77-5.89 (d, 2H, 11-H), 6.53 (s, 2H, 9-H), 6.88 (s, 2H, 9-H), 7.20 (s, 2H, 6-H), 7.24 (s, 2H, 6-H);  $^{13}\text{C}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ , 400 MHz):  $\delta$  19.9, 20.6, 23.1, 23.2, 25.3, 25.9, 28.1, 28.2, 28.8, 29.1, 29.2, 30.9, 31.3, 46.3, 56.0, 56.1, 60.0, 60.1, 63.4, 64.6, 68.4, 68.8, 80.9, 81.2, 88.3, 91.2, 95.7, 100.4, 110.1, 110.7, 114.6, 115.1, 127.5, 129.8, 148.5, 148.8, 150.0, 155.0, 167.3, 167.6; IR (neat): 3472, 2945, 1704, 1643, 1604, 1513, 1454, 1432, 1327, 1271, 1202, 1163, 1023  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ ; MS (FAB)  $m/z$  (relative intensity) 973 ( $[M + \text{Na}]^{+}$ , 46), 951 ( $M^{+}$ , 100), 968 (86), 849 (82), 749 (34).

(b) *1,1'-(Butane-1,4-diyl)dioxybis[(11aS)-7-methoxy-1,2,3,11a-tetrahydro-5H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepine-5-one]* (**16b**)  
95% TFA (3 mL) was added drop-wise to dimer compound **15b** (170 mg, 0.17 mmol) at 0°C. This was then stirred for 1hr and the mixture was poured into saturated  $\text{NaHCO}_3$  (30 mL) solution to naturalize the reaction mixture. The mixture was extracted with chloroform (3x20 mL). The organic layer was then washed water (20 mL), brine (20 mL) then dried ( $\text{MgSO}_4$ ) and filtrated. The excess solvent was removed under reduced pressure to give the crude product, which was subjected to flash column chromatography ( $\text{SiO}_2$ , 2%methanol-chloroform). Removal of excess eluent under reduced pressure without heating afforded the final product **16b** (58 mg, 0.1 mmol, 62%) as a solid:  $[\alpha]^{20}_D = +517^\circ$  ( $c = 0.18, \text{CHCl}_3$ );  $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ , 400 MHz):  $\delta$  2.04-2.09 (m, 8H, 2-H, 2'-H, 13-H, 13'-H), 2.30-2.36 (m, 4H, 1-H, 1'-H), 3.57-3.62 (m, 2H, 3-H, 3'-H), 3.71-3.74 (m, 2H, 11a-H, 11a'-H), 3.79-3.85 (m, 2H, 3-H, 3'-H), 3.93 (s, 6H, 7-OMe, 7'-OMe), 4.11-4.21 (m, 4H, 12-H, 12'-H), 6.82 (s, 2H, 9-H, 9'-H),

7.52 (s, 2H, 6-H, 6'-H), 7.66 (d, 2H,  $J$  = 4, 11-H, 11'-H);  $^{13}\text{C}$  NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, 400 MHz):  $\delta$  24.1, 25.7, 29.4, 46.6, 53.7, 56.1, 68.5, 110.5, 111.5, 120.2, 140.6, 147.8, 150.7, 162.3, 164.6; IR (neat): 3316, 2972, 1601, 1505, 1433, 1381, 1262, 1217, 1091cm<sup>-1</sup>; MS (FAB) 5 m/z (relative intensity) 611 ([M + 2 x MeOH]<sup>+</sup>, 32), 579 ([M + MeOH]<sup>+</sup>, 11), 547 (M<sup>+</sup>, 100).

**Example 15 (n=5)**

(a) 1,1'-(Pentane-1,5-diyl)dioxybis[(11S,11aS)-10-(tert-butyloxycarbonyl)-7-methoxy-11-(tetrahydro-pyran-2-yloxy)-1,2,3,10,11,11a-hexahydro-5H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepine-5-one] (15c)

1,5-Diodopentane (72.2 mg, 0.22 mmol, 0.5 equiv) was added to the mixture of monomer 14 (0.2 g, 0.44 mmol, 1.0 equiv) and potassium carbonate (0.98 mmol, 2.2 equiv) in dry DMF (30 mL), and the resulting mixture was heated to 90°C under a nitrogen atmosphere for 5 h. Removal of excess solvent under reduced pressure afforded a crude solid, which was subjected to flash column chromatography (SiO<sub>2</sub>, 50%EtOAc-hexane) to afford the dimerized compound 15c (212 mg, 0.21 mmol, 98% yield, mixture of diastereomers from THP protecting group) as a solid:  $[\alpha]^{20}_D$  = +40° (c = 0.22, CHCl<sub>3</sub>);  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, 400 MHz):  $\delta$  1.21-1.83 (m, 64H, 14-H, Boc, THP), 1.88-2.18 (m, 24H, 1-H, 2-H, 13-H), 3.41-3.73 (m, 16H, 3-H, 11a-H, THP), 3.84-4.10 (m, 24H, 12-H, 7-OMe, THP), 4.97-5.15 (m, 4H, THP), 5.66-5.75 (d, 2H, 11-H), 5.77-5.89 (d, 2H, 11-H), 6.50 (s, 2H, 9-H), 6.84 (s, 2H, 9-H), 7.17 (s, 2H, 6-H), 7.21 (s, 2H, 6-H);  $^{13}\text{C}$  NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, 400 MHz):  $\delta$  19.9, 20.5, 21.0, 22.7, 23.1, 23.3, 25.3, 28.1, 28.2, 28.9, 29.1, 31.0, 31.3, 46.3, 56.0, 56.1, 60.0, 60.1, 63.4, 64.6, 68.7, 69.0, 80.9, 81.3, 88.2, 91.2, 95.7, 100.4, 110.2, 110.7, 114.5, 115.0, 126.3, 129.7, 129.8, 148.5, 148.8, 150.0, 155.1, 167.4, 167.6; IR (neat): 3431, 2945, 1704, 1643, 1604, 1513, 1453, 1432, 1327, 1271, 1202, 1163, 1023cm<sup>-1</sup>; MS (FAB) m/z (relative intensity) 987 ([M + Na]<sup>+</sup>, 37), 965 (M<sup>+</sup>, 100), 763 (92), 863 (75), 982 (49).

(b) 1,1'--[(Pentane-1,5-diyl)dioxy]bis[(11aS)-7-methoxy-1,2,3,11a-tetrahydro-5H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepine-5-one] (**16c**)  
95% TFA (3 mL) was added drop-wise to dimer compound **15c** (180 mg, 0.19 mmol) at 0°C. This was then stirred for 1hr and the mixture  
5 was poured into saturated NaHCO<sub>3</sub> (30 mL) solution to naturalize the reaction mixture. The mixture was extracted with chloroform (3x20 mL). The organic layer was then washed water (20 mL), brine (20 mL) then dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>) and filtrated. The excess solvent was removed under reduced pressure to give the crude product, which  
10 was subjected to flash column chromatography (SiO<sub>2</sub>, 2%methanol-chloroform). Removal of excess eluent under reduced pressure without heating afforded the final product **16c** (70 mg, 0.12 mmol, 65%) as a solid: [α]<sup>20</sup><sub>D</sub> = +626° (c = 0.17, CHCl<sub>3</sub>); <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, 400 MHz): δ 1.62-1.71 (m, 2H, 14-H), 1.89-1.99 (m, 4H, 13-H, 13'-H), 2.0-2.11 (m, 4H, 2-H, 2'-H), 2.25-2.36 (m, 4H, 1-H, 1'-H), 3.53-  
15 3.62 (m, 2H, 3-H, 3'-H), 3.66-3.76 (m, 2H, 11a-H, 11a'-H), 3.77-3.85 (m, 2H, 3-H, 3'-H), 3.92 (s, 6H, 7-OMe, 7'-OMe), 4.01-4.16 (m, 4H, 12-H, 12'-H), 6.78 (s, 2H, 9-H, 9'-H), 7.50 (s, 2H, 6-H, 6'-H), 7.64 (d, 2H, J = 4, 11-H, 11'-H); <sup>13</sup>C NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, 400 MHz):  
20 δ 22.5, 29.6, 46.6, 53.7, 56.1, 68.7, 110.5, 111.6, 120.1, 140.6, 147.8, 150.8, 162.3, 164.6; IR (neat): 3350, 2946, 1600, 1505, 1455, 1433, 1383, 1262, 1217, 1092, 1020cm<sup>-1</sup>; MS (FAB) m/z (relative intensity) 625 ([M + 2 × MeOH]<sup>+</sup>, 4), 593 ([M + MeOH]<sup>+</sup>, 12), 547 (M<sup>+</sup>, 100).

25

**Example 16 (n=6)**

(a) 1,1'--[(Hexane-1,6-diyl)dioxy]bis[(11S,11aS)-10-(tert-butyloxycarbonyl)-7-methoxy-11-(tetrahydro-pyran-2-yloxy)-1,2,3,10,11,11a-hexahydro-5H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepine-5-one] (**15d**)  
30

1,6-Diodohexane (75.3 mg, 0.22 mg, 0.5 equiv) was added to the mixture of monomer **14** (0.2 g, 0.44 mmol, 1.0 equiv) and potassium carbonate (0.98 mmol, 2.2 equiv) in dry DMF (30 mL), and the resulting mixture was heated to 90°C under a nitrogen atmosphere  
35 for 5 h. Removal of excess solvent under reduced pressure afforded

a crude solid, which was subjected to flash column chromatography ( $\text{SiO}_2$ , 50%EtOAc-hexane) to afford the dimerized compound **15d** (190 mg, 0.19 mmol, 87% yield, mixture of diastereomers from THP protecting group) as a solid:  $[\alpha]^{20}_{\text{D}} = +11^\circ$  ( $c = 0.18$ ,  $\text{CHCl}_3$ );  $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ , 400 MHz):  $\delta$  1.25-1.66 (m, 60H, 14-H, Boc, THP), 1.68-2.85 (m, 8H, THP), 1.86-2.20 (m, 24H, 1-H, 2-H, 13-H), 3.44-3.73 (m, 16H, 3-H, 11a-H, THP), 3.86-4.10 (m, 24H, 12-H, 7-OMe, THP), 5.01-5.17 (m, 4H, THP), 5.68-5.76 (d, 2H, 11-H), 5.78-5.89 (d, 2H, 11-H), 6.50 (s, 2H, 9-H), 6.87 (s, 2H, 9-H), 7.19 (s, 2H, 6-H), 7.23 (s, 2H, 6-H);  $^{13}\text{C}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ , 400 MHz):  $\delta$  19.8, 20.5, 23.1, 23.2, 25.3, 25.9, 28.1, 28.2, 28.9, 29.02, 29.06, 29.1, 29.2, 30.9, 31.2, 46.3, 56.1, 56.2, 60.0, 60.1, 63.3, 64.5, 68.8, 69.1, 80.9, 81.3, 88.2, 91.2, 95.7, 100.3, 110.1, 110.6, 114.5, 115.0, 126.3, 129.8, 148.5, 148.8, 150.0, 155.1, 167.4, 167.6; IR (neat): 2944, 1704, 1643, 1605, 1513, 1454, 1432, 1327, 1272, 1202, 1164, 1023  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ ; MS (FAB)  $m/z$  (relative intensity) 1001 ( $[M + \text{Na}]^{+\cdot}$ , 21), 979 ( $M^{+\cdot}$ , 100), 877 (26), 777 (17).

(b) *1,1'-[Hexane-1,6-diyl]dioxybis[(11aS)-7-methoxy-1,2,3,11a-tetrahydro-5H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepine-5-one]* (**16d**)  
95% TFA (3 mL) was added drop-wise to dimer compound **15d** (190 mg, 0.19 mmol) at 0°C. This was then stirred for 1hr and the mixture was poured into saturated  $\text{NaHCO}_3$  (30 mL) solution to naturalize the reaction mixture. The mixture was extracted with chloroform (3x20 mL). The organic layer was then washed water (20 mL), brine (20 mL) then dried ( $\text{MgSO}_4$ ) and filtrated. The excess solvent was removed under reduced pressure to give the crude product, which was subjected to flash column chromatography ( $\text{SiO}_2$ , 2%methanol-chloroform). Removal of excess eluent under reduced pressure without heating afforded the final product **16d** (99 mg, 0.17 mmol, 90%) as a solid:  $[\alpha]^{20}_{\text{D}} = +474^\circ$  ( $c = 0.19$ ,  $\text{CHCl}_3$ );  $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ , 400 MHz):  $\delta$  1.49-1.65 (m, 4H, 14-H, 14'-H), 1.82-1.97 (m, 4H, 13-H, 13'-H), 1.99-2.13 (m, 4H, 2-H, 2'-H), 2.26-2.41 (m, 4H, 1-H, 1'-H), 3.53-3.65 (m, 2H, 3-H, 3'-H), 3.68-3.76 (m, 2H, 11a-H, 11a'-H), 3.77-3.89 (m, 2H, 3-H, 3'-H), 3.94 (s, 6H, 7-OMe, 7'-OMe), 4.01-4.17 (m, 4H, 12-H, 12'-H), 6.80 (s, 2H, 9-H, 9'-H), 7.52 (s,

2H, 6-H, 6'-H), 7.66 (d, 2H,  $J$  = 4, 11-H, 11'-H);  $^{13}\text{C}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ , 400 MHz):  $\delta$  24.1, 25.7, 28.8, 29.6, 46.6, 53.7, 56.1, 68.8, 110.4, 111.6, 120.1, 140.6, 147.8, 150.8, 162.3, 164.6; IR (neat): 3318, 2943, 1601, 1506, 1454, 1433, 1382, 1262, 1217, 1021  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ ; MS (FAB) 5  $m/z$  (relative intensity) 639 ( $[M + 2 \times \text{MeOH}]^{+ \cdot}$ , 6), 607 ( $[M + \text{MeOH}]^{+ \cdot}$ , 23), 575 ( $M^{+ \cdot}$ , 100).

**Example 17 (n=7)**

(a) 1,1'-(Heptane-1,7-diyl)dioxy]bis[(11*S*,11*a**S*)-10-(tert-butyloxycarbonyl)-7-methoxy-11-(tetrahydro-pyran-2-yloxy)-1,2,3,10,11,11*a*-hexahydro-5*H*-pyrrolo[2,1-*c*][1,4]benzodiazepine-5-one] (**15e**)

1,7-Dibromoheptane (57.5 mg, 0.22 mmol, 0.5 equiv) was added to the mixture of monomer **14** (0.2 g, 0.44 mmol, 1.0 equiv), potassium carbonate (0.98 mmol, 2.2 equiv) and a catalytic amount of potassium iodide in dry DMF (30 mL), and the resulting mixture was heated to 90°C under a nitrogen atmosphere for 5 h. Removal of excess solvent under reduced pressure afforded a crude solid, which was subjected to flash column chromatography ( $\text{SiO}_2$ , 50%EtOAc-hexane) to afford the dimerized compound **15e** (200 mg, 0.20 mmol, 91% yield, mixture of diastereomers from THP protecting group) as a solid:  $[\alpha]^{20}_{\text{D}} = +34^\circ$  ( $c = 0.13$ ,  $\text{CHCl}_3$ );  $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ , 400 MHz):  $\delta$  1.25-1.64 (m, 64H, 14-H, 15-H, Boc, THP), 1.67-1.92 (m, 16H, 13-H, THP), 1.93-2.19 (m, 16H, 1-H, 2-H), 3.41-3.73 (m, 16H, 3-H, 11*a*-H, THP), 3.86-4.08 (m, 24H, 12-H, 7-OMe, THP), 5.01-5.17 (m, 4H, THP), 5.68-5.76 (d, 2H, 11-H), 5.78-5.89 (d, 2H, 11-H), 6.49 (s, 2H, 9-H), 6.85 (s, 2H, 9-H), 7.18 (s, 2H, 6-H), 7.22 (s, 2H, 6-H);  $^{13}\text{C}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ , 400 MHz):  $\delta$  19.8, 20.5, 23.1, 23.3, 25.3, 25.9, 28.1, 28.2, 28.9, 29.1, 29.2, 29.3, 30.9, 31.2, 46.3, 56.1, 56.2, 60.0, 60.2, 63.3, 64.5, 68.9, 69.1, 80.9, 81.3, 88.2, 91.2, 95.7, 100.3, 110.1, 110.6, 114.4, 115.0, 121.0, 129.8, 133.4, 148.4, 148.8, 155.1, 167.4, 167.6; IR (neat): 2942, 1704, 1643, 1605, 1513, 1454, 1432, 1327, 1272, 1202, 1164, 1023  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ ; MS (FAB)  $m/z$  (relative intensity) 1015 ( $[M + \text{Na}]^{+ \cdot}$ , 23), 993 ( $M^{+ \cdot}$ , 100), 891 (34), 791 (25).

(b) *1,1'-(Heptane-1,7-diyl)dioxybis[(11a*S*)-7-methoxy-1,2,3,11*a*-tetrahydro-5*H*-pyrrolo[2,1-*c*][1,4]benzodiazepine-5-one] (16e)*

95% TFA (3 mL) was added drop-wise to dimer compound **15e** (200 mg, 0.2 mmol) at 0°C. This was then stirred for 1hr and the mixture was poured into saturated NaHCO<sub>3</sub> (30 mL) solution to naturalize the reaction mixture. The mixture was extracted with chloroform (3x20 mL). The organic layer was then washed water (20 mL), brine (20 mL) then dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>) and filtrated. The excess solvent was removed under reduced pressure to give the crude product, which was subjected to flash column chromatography (SiO<sub>2</sub>, 2%methanol-chloroform). Removal of excess eluent under reduced pressure without heating afforded the final product **16e** (100 mg, 0.17 mmol, 85%) as a solid: [α]<sup>20</sup><sub>D</sub> = +484° (c = 0.15, CHCl<sub>3</sub>); <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, 400 MHz): δ 1.39-1.56 (m, 6H, 14-H, 14'-H, 15-H), 1.83-1.94 (m, 4H, 13-H, 13'-H), 2.00-2.10 (m, 4H, 2-H, 2'-H), 2.26-2.38 (m, 4H, 1-H, 1'-H), 3.54-3.63 (m, 2H, 3-H, 3'-H), 3.70-3.77 (m, 2H, 11*a*-H, 11*a'*-H), 3.79-3.91 (m, 2H, 3-H, 3'-H), 3.93 (s, 6H, 7-OMe, 7'-OMe), 4.00-4.18 (m, 4H, 12-H, 12'-H), 6.79 (s, 2H, 9-H, 9'-H), 7.51 (s, 2H, 6-H, 6'-H), 7.65 (d, 2H, J = 4, 11-H, 11'-H); <sup>13</sup>C NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, 400 MHz): δ 24.1, 25.8, 28.8, 29.0, 46.6, 53.7, 56.1, 68.9, 110.4, 111.6, 120.0, 140.6, 147.8, 150.9, 162.3, 164.6; IR (neat): 3317, 2936, 1620, 1599, 1505, 1453, 1430, 1381, 1261, 1216, 1092, 1020cm<sup>-1</sup>; MS (FAB) m/z (relative intensity) 653 ([M + 2 × MeOH]<sup>++</sup>, 4), 621 ([M + MeOH]<sup>++</sup>, 3), 589 (M<sup>+</sup>, 100).

25

**Example 18 (n=8)**

(a) *1,1'-(Octane-1,8-diyl)dioxybis[(11*S*,11*a**S*)-10-(tert-butyloxycarbonyl)-7-methoxy-11-(tetrahydro-pyran-2-yloxy)-1,2,3,10,11,11*a*-hexahydro-5*H*-pyrrolo[2,1-*c*][1,4]benzodiazepine-5-one] (15f)*

1,8-Diodooctane (81.6 mg, 0.22 mmol, 0.5 equiv) was added to the mixture of monomer **14** (0.2 g, 0.44 mmol, 1.0 equiv) and potassium carbonate (0.98 mmol, 2.2 equiv) in dry DMF (30 mL), and the resulting mixture was heated to 90°C under a nitrogen atmosphere for 5 h. Removal of excess solvent under reduced pressure afforded a crude solid, which was subjected to flash column chromatography

( $\text{SiO}_2$ , 50%EtOAc-hexane) to afford the dimerized compound **15f** (190 mg, 0.18 mmol, 85% yield, mixture of diastereomers from THP protecting group) as a solid:  $[\alpha]^{20}_{\text{D}} = +28^\circ$  ( $c = 0.16$ ,  $\text{CHCl}_3$ );  $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ , 400 MHz):  $\delta$  1.22-1.64 (m, 68H, 14-H, 15-H, Boc, THP), 1.67-1.91 (m, 16H, 13-H, THP), 1.93-2.19 (m, 16H, 1-H, 2-H), 3.41-3.72 (m, 16H, 3-H, 11a-H, THP), 3.85-4.08 (m, 24H, 12-H, 7-OMe, THP), 5.01-5.17 (m, 4H, THP), 5.68-5.76 (d, 2H, 11-H), 5.78-5.89 (d, 2H, 11-H), 6.49 (s, 2H, 9-H), 6.85 (s, 2H, 9-H), 7.18 (s, 2H, 6-H), 7.22 (s, 2H, 6-H);  $^{13}\text{C}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ , 400 MHz):  $\delta$  19.8, 20.5, 23.1, 23.2, 25.3, 25.9, 28.1, 28.2, 28.9, 29.00, 29.04, 29.1, 29.3, 30.9, 31.2, 46.3, 56.1, 56.2, 60.0, 60.2, 63.3, 64.5, 68.9, 69.2, 80.9, 81.3, 88.2, 91.2, 95.7, 100.3, 110.1, 110.6, 114.4, 115.0, 126.4, 129.8, 133.4, 148.5, 148.8, 155.1, 167.4, 167.6; IR (neat): 2940, 1703, 1642, 1604, 1513, 1454, 1432, 1327, 1272, 1202, 1163, 1023  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ ; MS (FAB)  $m/z$  (relative intensity) 1029 ( $[M + \text{Na}]^{+\cdot}$ , 54), 1007 ( $M^{+\cdot}$ , 100), 905 (28), 805 (20).

(b) *1,1'-(Octane-1,8-diyl)dioxybis[(11aS)-7-methoxy-1,2,3,11a-tetrahydro-5H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepine-5-one]* (**16f**)  
95% TFA (3 mL) was added drop-wise to dimer compound **15f** (190 mg, 0.18 mmol) at 0°C. This was then stirred for 1hr and the mixture was poured into saturated  $\text{NaHCO}_3$  (30 mL) solution to naturalize the reaction mixture. The mixture was extracted with chloroform (3x20 mL). The organic layer was then washed water (20 mL), brine (20 mL) then dried ( $\text{MgSO}_4$ ) and filtrated. The excess solvent was removed under reduced pressure to give the crude product, which was subjected to flash column chromatography ( $\text{SiO}_2$ , 2%methanol-chloroform). Removal of excess eluent under reduced pressure without heating afforded the final product **16f** (105 mg, 0.17 mmol, 96%) as a solid:  $[\alpha]^{20}_{\text{D}} = +1330^\circ$  ( $c = 0.13$ ,  $\text{CHCl}_3$ );  $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ , 400 MHz):  $\delta$  1.32-1.58 (m, 8H, 14-H, 14'-H, 15-H, 15'-H), 1.78-1.92 (m, 4H, 13-H, 13'-H), 1.93-2.10 (m, 4H, 2-H, 2'-H), 2.26-2.38 (m, 4H, 1-H, 1'-H), 3.55-3.64 (m, 2H, 3-H, 3'-H), 3.70-3.76 (m, 2H, 11a-H, 11a'-H), 3.77-3.89 (m, 2H, 3-H, 3'-H), 3.93 (s, 6H, 7-OMe, 7'-OMe), 3.98-4.15 (m, 4H, 12-H, 12'-H), 6.79 (s, 2H, 9-H, 9'-H), 7.51 (s, 2H, 6-H, 6'-H), 7.65 (d, 2H,  $J = 4.4$ , 11-H, 11'-H);  $^{13}\text{C}$

NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ , 400 MHz):  $\delta$  24.1, 25.8, 28.8, 29.2, 29.6, 46.6, 53.7, 56.1, 69.0, 110.4, 111.6, 120.0, 140.6, 147.8, 150.9, 162.2, 164.67; IR (neat): 3326, 2934, 1599, 1505, 1455, 1431, 1382, 1261, 1216, 1092,  $1019\text{cm}^{-1}$ ; MS (FAB)  $m/z$  (relative intensity) 667 ( $[M + 2 \times \text{MeOH}]^{+·}$ , 3), 635 ( $[M + \text{MeOH}]^{+·}$ , 8), 603 ( $M^{+·}$ , 100).

5 **Example 19 (n=9)**

(a) *1,1'-[(Nonane-1,9-diyl)dioxy]bis[(11*S*,11*a**S*)-10-(tert-*

10 *butyloxycarbonyl)-7-methoxy-11-(tetrahydro-pyran-2-yloxy)-1,2,3,10,11,11*a*-hexahydro-5*H*-pyrrolo[2,1-*c*][1,4]benzodiazepine-5-one] (15g)*

15 1,9-Dibromononane (63.7 mg, 0.22 mmol, 0.5 equiv) was added to the mixture of monomer **14** (0.2 g, 0.44 mmol, 1.0 equiv) potassium carbonate (0.98 mmol, 2.2 equiv) and a catalytic amount of

20 potassium iodide in dry DMF (30 mL), and the resulting mixture was heated to 90°C under a nitrogen atmosphere for 5 h. Removal of excess solvent under reduced pressure afforded a crude solid, which was subjected to flash column chromatography ( $\text{SiO}_2$ , 50%EtOAc-hexane) to afford the dimerized compound **15g** (200 mg, 0.19 mmol,

25 89% yield, mixture of diastereomers from THP protecting group) as a solid:  $[\alpha]^{20}_D = +43^\circ$  ( $c = 0.16$ ,  $\text{CHCl}_3$ );  $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ , 400 MHz):  $\delta$  1.22-1.67 (m, 72H, 14-H, 15-H, 16-H, Boc, THP), 1.68-1.91 (m, 16H, 13-H, THP), 1.92-2.19 (m, 16H, 1-H, 2-H), 3.41-3.74 (m, 16H, 3-H, 11*a*-H, THP), 3.85-4.09 (m, 24H, 12-H, 7-OMe, THP), 5.01-5.17 (m, 4H, THP), 5.68-5.76 (d, 2H, 11-H), 5.78-5.89 (d, 2H, 11-H),

25 6.49(s, 2H, 9-H), 6.85 (s, 2H, 9-H), 7.18 (s, 2H, 6-H), 7.22 (s, 2H, 6-H);  $^{13}\text{C}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ , 400 MHz):  $\delta$  19.8, 20.5, 23.2, 23.3, 25.3, 25.9, 28.1, 28.2, 28.9, 29.01, 29.06, 29.1, 29.4, 30.9, 31.3,

30 46.3, 56.1, 56.2, 60.0, 60.2, 63.3, 64.5, 69.0, 69.2, 80.9, 81.3,

88.2, 91.2, 95.7, 100.3, 110.1, 110.6, 114.5, 115.0, 126.4, 129.8,

133.4, 148.5, 148.8, 155.1, 167.4, 167.6; IR (neat): 2939, 1703,

1642, 1604, 1513, 1454, 1432, 1327, 1271, 1202, 1163,  $1023\text{cm}^{-1}$ ; MS

(FAB)  $m/z$  (relative intensity) 1043 ( $[M + \text{Na}]^{+·}$ , 45), 1021 ( $M^{+·}$ , 100), 919 (28), 819 (19).

(b) *1,1'-(Nonane-1,9-diyl)dioxy]bis[(11a*S*)-7-methoxy-1,2,3,11*a*-tetrahydro-5*H*-pyrrolo[2,1-*c*][1,4]benzodiazepine-5-one] (16g)*

95% TFA (3 mL) was added drop-wise to dimer compound **15g** (200 mg, 0.19 mmol) at 0°C. This was then stirred for 1hr and the mixture was poured into saturated NaHCO<sub>3</sub> (30 mL) solution to naturalize the reaction mixture. The mixture was extracted with chloroform (3x20 mL). The organic layer was then washed water (20 mL), brine (20 mL) then dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>) and filtrated. The excess solvent was removed under reduced pressure to give the crude product, which was subjected to flash column chromatography (SiO<sub>2</sub>, 2%methanol-chloroform). Removal of excess eluent under reduced pressure without heating afforded the final product **16g** (98 mg, 0.15 mmol, 83%) as a solid: [α]<sup>20</sup><sub>D</sub> = +864° (c = 0.14, CHCl<sub>3</sub>); <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, 400 MHz): δ 1.32-1.52 (m, 10H, 14-H, 14'-H, 15-H, 15'-H, 16-H), 1.83-1.90 (m, 4H, 13-H, 13'-H), 2.02-2.09 (m, 4H, 2-H, 2'-H), 2.27-2.36 (m, 4H, 1-H, 1'-H), 3.54-3.64 (m, 2H, 3-H, 3'-H), 3.70-3.77 (m, 2H, 11*a*-H, 11*a*'-H), 3.78-3.88 (m, 2H, 3-H, 3'-H), 3.93 (s, 6H, 7-OMe, 7'-OMe), 3.99-4.15 (m, 4H, 12-H, 12'-H), 6.80 (s, 2H, 9-H, 9'-H), 7.51 (s, 2H, 6-H, 6'-H), 7.65 (d, 2H, J = 4.4, 11-H, 11'-H); <sup>13</sup>C NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, 400 MHz): δ 24.1, 25.8, 28.8, 29.2, 29.3, 29.6, 46.6, 53.7, 56.1, 69.0, 110.4, 111.6, 120.0, 140.6, 147.8, 150.9, 162.8, 164.6; IR (neat): 2934, 1622, 1599, 1557, 1505, 1455, 1429, 1382, 1339, 1260, 1216, 1092, 1020cm<sup>-1</sup>; MS (FAB) m/z (relative intensity) 681 ([M + 2 x MeOH]<sup>+</sup>, 6), 649 ([M + MeOH]<sup>+</sup>, 12), 617 (M<sup>+</sup>, 100).

**Example 20 (n=10)**

(a) *1,1'-(Decane-1,10-diyl)dioxy]bis[(11*S*,11*a**S*)-10-(tert-butyloxycarbonyl)-7-methoxy-11-(tetrahydro-pyran-2-yloxy)-1,2,3,10,11,11*a*-hexahydro-5*H*-pyrrolo[2,1-*c*][1,4]benzodiazepine-5-one] (15h)*

1,10-Diododecane (87.8 mg, 0.22 mmol, 0.5 equiv) was added to the mixture of monomer **14** (0.2 g, 0.44 mmol, 1.0 equiv) and potassium carbonate (0.98 mmol, 2.2 equiv) in dry DMF (30 mL), and the resulting mixture was heated to 90°C under a nitrogen atmosphere for 5 h. Removal of excess solvent under reduced pressure afforded

a crude solid, which was subjected to flash column chromatography ( $\text{SiO}_2$ , 50%EtOAc-hexane) to afford the dimerized compound **15h** (180 mg, 0.17 mmol, 79% yield, mixture of diastereomers from THP protecting group) as a solid:  $[\alpha]^{20}_{\text{D}} = +59^\circ$  ( $c = 0.16$ ,  $\text{CHCl}_3$ );  $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ , 400 MHz):  $\delta$  1.22-1.67 (m, 76H, 14-H, 15-H, 16-H, Boc, THP), 1.68-1.91 (m, 16H, 13-H, THP), 1.92-2.19 (m, 16H, 1-H, 2-H), 3.41-3.72 (m, 16H, 3-H, 11a-H, THP), 3.85-4.09 (m, 24H, 12-H, 7-OMe, THP), 5.01-5.17 (m, 4H, THP), 5.68-5.76 (d, 2H, 11-H), 5.78-5.89 (d, 2H, 11-H), 6.50 (s, 2H, 9-H), 6.85 (s, 2H, 9-H), 7.18 (s, 2H, 6-H), 7.21 (s, 2H, 6-H);  $^{13}\text{C}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ , 400 MHz):  $\delta$  19.8, 20.5, 23.2, 23.3, 25.3, 26.0, 28.1, 28.2, 28.9, 29.00, 29.04, 29.1, 29.4, 29.5, 30.9, 31.3, 46.3, 56.1, 56.2, 60.0, 60.2, 63.3, 64.5, 69.0, 69.2, 80.9, 81.3, 88.2, 91.2, 95.7, 100.3, 110.1, 110.6, 114.5, 115.0, 126.4, 129.8, 133.4, 148.5, 148.8, 155.1, 167.4, 167.6; IR (neat): 2938, 1703, 1642, 1605, 1513, 1454, 1432, 1327, 1271, 1202, 1163, 1023 $\text{cm}^{-1}$ ; MS (FAB)  $m/z$  (relative intensity) 1057 ( $[M + \text{Na}]^+$ , 48), 1035 ( $M^+$ , 100), 933 (26), 833 (20).

(b) *1,1'-(Decane-1,10-diyl)dioxybis[(11aS)-7-methoxy-1,2,3,11a-tetrahydro-5H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepine-5-one]* (**16h**)  
95% TFA (3 mL) was added drop-wise to dimer compound **15h** (180 mg, 0.17 mmol) at 0°C. This was then stirred for 1hr and the mixture was poured into saturated  $\text{NaHCO}_3$  (30 mL) solution to naturalize the reaction mixture. The mixture was extracted with chloroform (3x20 mL). The organic layer was then washed water (20 mL), brine (20 mL) then dried ( $\text{MgSO}_4$ ) and filtrated. The excess solvent was removed under reduced pressure to give the crude product, which was subjected to flash column chromatography ( $\text{SiO}_2$ , 2%methanol-chloroform). Removal of excess eluent under reduced pressure without heating afforded the final product **16h** (103 mg, 0.16 mmol, 96%) as a solid:  $[\alpha]^{20}_{\text{D}} = +500^\circ$  ( $c = 0.11$ ,  $\text{CHCl}_3$ );  $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ , 400 MHz):  $\delta$  1.26-1.50 (m, 12H, 14-H, 14'-H, 15-H, 15'-H, 16-H, 16'-H), 1.82-1.91 (m, 4H, 13-H, 13'-H), 1.98-2.09 (m, 4H, 2-H, 2'-H), 2.25-2.35 (m, 4H, 1-H, 1'-H), 3.54-3.61 (m, 2H, 3-H, 3'-H), 3.69-3.73 (m, 2H, 11a-H, 11a'-H), 3.78-3.83 (m, 2H, 3-H, 3'-H), 3.93 (s, 6H, 7-OMe, 7'-OMe), 3.98-4.14 (m, 4H, 12-H, 12'-H), 6.79 (s,

2H, 9-H, 9'-H), 7.50 (s, 2H, 6-H, 6'-H), 7.65 (d, 2H,  $J$  = 4.4, 11-H, 11'-H);  $^{13}\text{C}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ , 400 MHz):  $\delta$  24.1, 25.8, 28.8, 29.3, 29.4, 29.6, 46.6, 53.7, 56.1, 69.0, 110.4, 111.6, 120.0, 140.6, 147.8, 150.9, 162.3, 164.6; IR (neat): 2928, 1599, 1557, 1505, 1455, 1430, 1382, 1261, 1216, 1092, 1019 $\text{cm}^{-1}$ ; MS (FAB)  $m/z$  (relative intensity) 695 ( $[M + 2 \times \text{MeOH}]^{+}$ , 8), 663 ( $[M + \text{MeOH}]^{+}$ , 16), 631 ( $M^{+}$ , 100).

**Example 21 (n=11)**

(a) *1,1'-(Undecane-1,11-diyl)dioxy]bis[(11*S*,11*a**S*)-10-(tert-butyloxycarbonyl)-7-methoxy-11-(tetrahydro-pyran-2-yloxy)-1,2,3,10,11,11*a*-hexahydro-5*H*-pyrrolo[2,1-*c*][1,4]benzodiazepine-5-one] (15*i*)*

1,11-Dibromoundecane (70.0 mg, 0.22 mmol, 0.5 equiv) was added to the mixture of monomer **14** (0.2 g, 0.44 mmol, 1.0 equiv) potassium carbonate (0.98 mmol, 2.2 equiv) and a catalytic amount of potassium iodide in dry DMF (30 mL), and the resulting mixture was heated to 90°C under a nitrogen atmosphere for 5 h. Removal of excess solvent under reduced pressure afforded a crude solid, which was subjected to flash column chromatography ( $\text{SiO}_2$ , 50%EtOAc-hexane) to afford the dimerized compound **15i** (210 mg, 0.20 mmol, 91% yield, mixture of diastereomers from THP protecting group) as a solid:  $[\alpha]^{20}_{\text{D}} = +33^\circ$  ( $c = 0.18$ ,  $\text{CHCl}_3$ );  $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ , 400 MHz):  $\delta$  1.22-1.66 (m, 80H, 14-H, 15-H, 16-H, 17-H, Boc, THP), 1.67-1.91 (m, 16H, 13-H, THP), 1.92-2.18 (m, 16H, 1-H, 2-H), 3.41-3.72 (m, 16H, 3-H, 11*a*-H, THP), 3.85-4.08 (m, 24H, 12-H, 7-OMe, THP), 4.99-5.15 (m, 4H, THP), 5.67-5.75 (d, 2H, 11-H), 5.77-5.88 (d, 2H, 11-H), 6.49 (s, 2H, 9-H), 6.85 (s, 2H, 9-H), 7.18 (s, 2H, 6-H), 7.21 (s, 2H, 6-H);  $^{13}\text{C}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ , 400 MHz):  $\delta$  19.8, 20.5, 23.2, 23.3, 25.3, 26.0, 28.1, 28.2, 28.9, 29.0, 29.1, 29.4, 29.5, 30.9, 31.3, 46.3, 56.1, 56.2, 60.0, 60.2, 63.3, 64.5, 69.0, 69.2, 80.9, 81.3, 88.2, 91.2, 95.7, 100.3, 110.1, 110.6, 114.5, 115.0, 126.4, 129.8, 133.4, 148.5, 148.8, 155.1, 167.4, 167.7; IR (neat): 2936, 1704, 1642, 1605, 1513, 1454, 1432, 1327, 1272, 1202, 1164, 1023 $\text{cm}^{-1}$ ; MS (FAB)  $m/z$  (relative intensity) 1071 ( $[M + \text{Na}]^{+}$ , 76), 1049 ( $M^{+}$ , 100), 947 (24), 847 (19).

(b) *1,1'-[ (Undecane-1,11-diyl)dioxy]bis[(11aS)-7-methoxy-1,2,3,11a-tetrahydro-5H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepine-5-one]* (16i)

95% TFA (3 mL) was added drop-wise to dimer compound 15i (210 mg, 0.20 mmol) at 0°C. This was then stirred for 1hr and the mixture was poured into saturated NaHCO<sub>3</sub> (30 mL) solution to naturalize the reaction mixture. The mixture was extracted with chloroform (3x20 mL). The organic layer was then washed water (20 mL), brine (20 mL) then dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>) and filtrated. The excess solvent was removed under reduced pressure to give the crude product, which was subjected to flash column chromatography (SiO<sub>2</sub>, 2%methanol-chloroform). Removal of excess eluent under reduced pressure without heating afforded the final product 16i (105 mg, 0.16 mmol, 81%) as a solid:  $[\alpha]^{20}_D = +623^\circ$  (*c* = 0.13, CHCl<sub>3</sub>); <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, 400 MHz):  $\delta$  1.26-1.52 (m, 14H, 14-H, 14'-H, 15-H, 15'-H, 16-H, 16'-H, 17-H), 1.82-1.92 (m, 4H, 13-H, 13'-H), 1.99-2.12 (m, 4H, 2-H, 2'-H), 2.26-2.38 (m, 4H, 1-H, 1'-H), 3.55-3.64 (m, 2H, 3-H, 3'-H), 3.69-3.77 (m, 2H, 11a-H, 11a'-H), 3.78-3.91 (m, 2H, 3-H, 3'-H), 3.94 (s, 6H, 7-OMe, 7'-OMe), 4.99-4.24 (m, 4H, 12-H, 12'-H), 6.80 (s, 2H, 9-H, 9'-H), 7.51 (s, 2H, 6-H, 6'-H), 7.65 (d, 2H, *J* = 4.4, 11-H, 11'-H); <sup>13</sup>C NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, 400 MHz):  $\delta$  24.1, 25.9, 28.9, 29.3, 29.4, 29.6, 46.6, 53.7, 56.1, 69.1, 110.4, 111.5, 120.0, 140.6, 147.8, 150.9, 162.3, 164.6; IR (neat): 3321, 2927, 1599, 1505, 1455, 1431, 1382, 1261, 1216, 1092, 1022cm<sup>-1</sup>; MS (FAB) *m/z* (relative intensity) 709 ([*M* + 2 x MeOH]<sup>+</sup>, 4), 677 ([*M* + MeOH]<sup>+</sup>, 11), 645 (*M*<sup>+</sup>, 100).

**Example 22 (n=12)**

(a) *1,1'-[ (Dodecane-1,12-diyl)dioxy]bis[(11*S*,11a*S*)-10-(tert-butyloxycarbonyl)-7-methoxy-11-(tetrahydro-pyran-2-yloxy)-1,2,3,10,11,11a-hexahydro-5H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepine-5-one]* (15j)

1,12-Dibromododecane (73.1 mg, 0.22 mmol, 0.5 equiv) was added to the mixture of monomer 14 (0.2 g, 0.44 mmol, 1.0 equiv) potassium carbonate (0.98 mmol, 2.2 equiv) and a catalytic amount of

potassium iodide in dry DMF (30 mL), and the resulting mixture was heated to 90°C under a nitrogen atmosphere for 5 h. Removal of excess solvent under reduced pressure afforded a crude solid, which was subjected to flash column chromatography (SiO<sub>2</sub>, 50%EtOAc-hexane) to afford the dimerized compound **15j** (210 mg, 0.19 mmol, 5 89% yield, mixture of diastereomers from THP protecting group) as a solid: [α]<sup>20</sup><sub>D</sub> = +50° (c = 0.19, CHCl<sub>3</sub>); <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, 400 MHz): δ 1.22-1.66 (m, 84H, 14-H, 15-H, 16-H, 17-H, Boc, THP), 1.67-1.91 (m, 16H, 13-H, THP), 1.92-2.19 (m, 16H, 1-H, 2-H), 3.41-3.72 (m, 16H, 3-H, 11a-H, THP), 3.88-4.08 (m, 24H, 12-H, 7-OMe, THP), 5.00-10 5.15 (m, 4H, THP), 5.67-5.74 (d, 2H, 11-H), 5.78-5.87 (d, 2H, 11-H), 6.49 (s, 2H, 9-H), 6.85 (s, 2H, 9-H), 7.18 (s, 2H, 6-H), 7.21 (s, 2H, 6-H); <sup>13</sup>C NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, 400 MHz): δ 19.8, 20.5, 23.1, 23.3, 25.3, 26.0, 28.1, 28.2, 28.91, 28.98, 29.0, 29.1, 29.4, 29.5, 15 29.6, 30.9, 31.3, 46.3, 56.1, 56.2, 60.0, 60.2, 63.3, 64.5, 69.0, 69.2, 80.9, 81.3, 88.2, 91.2, 95.7, 100.3, 110.1, 110.6, 114.5, 115.0, 126.4, 129.8, 133.4, 148.5, 148.8, 155.1, 167.4, 167.7; IR (neat): 2932, 1702, 1644, 1604, 1512, 1454, 1431, 1326, 1271, 1202, 1163, 1023cm<sup>-1</sup>; MS (FAB) m/z (relative intensity) 1085 ([M + Na]<sup>+</sup>, 43), 1063 (M<sup>+</sup>, 100), 961 (31), 861 (17).

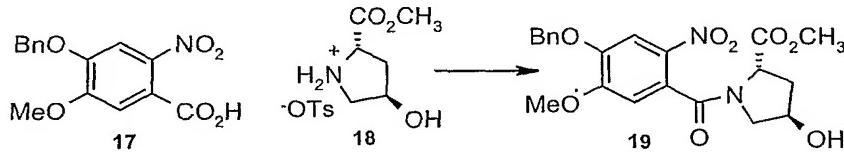
(b) 1,1'-(Dodecane-1,12-diyl)dioxybis[(11aS)-7-methoxy-1,2,3,11a-tetrahydro-5H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepine-5-one] (**16j**)

25 95% TFA (3 mL) was added drop-wise to dimer compound **15j** (210 mg, 0.19 mmol) at 0°C. This was then stirred for 1hr and the mixture was poured into saturated NaHCO<sub>3</sub> (30 mL) solution to naturalize the reaction mixture. The mixture was extracted with chloroform (3x20 mL). The organic layer was then washed water (20 mL), brine (20 mL) then dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>) and filtrated. The excess solvent was removed under reduced pressure to give the crude product, which was subjected to flash column chromatography (SiO<sub>2</sub>, 2%methanol-chloroform). Removal of excess eluent under reduced pressure without heating afforded the final product **16j** (112 mg, 0.17 mmol, 30 89%) as a solid: [α]<sup>20</sup><sub>D</sub> = +637° (c = 0.13, CHCl<sub>3</sub>); <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, 400 MHz): δ 1.24-1.51 (m, 16H, 14-H, 14'-H, 15-H, 15'-H, 16-H, 16'-H,

17-H, 17'-H), 1.78-1.93 (m, 4H, 13-H, 13'-H), 1.98-2.11 (m, 4H, 2-H, 2'-H), 2.25-2.38 (m, 4H, 1-H, 1'-H), 3.54-3.64 (m, 2H, 3-H, 3'-H), 3.68-3.76 (m, 2H, 11a-H, 11a'-H), 3.77-3.89 (m, 2H, 3-H, 3'-H), 3.93 (s, 6H, 7-OMe, 7'-OMe), 3.98-4.14 (m, 4H, 12-H, 12'-H),  
5 6.79 (s, 2H, 9-H, 9'-H), 7.50 (s, 2H, 6-H, 6'-H), 7.64 (d, 2H,  $J$  = 4.4, 11-H, 11'-H);  $^{13}\text{C}$  NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, 400 MHz):  $\delta$  24.1, 25.9, 28.9, 29.3, 29.5, 29.5, 29.6, 46.6, 53.7, 56.1, 69.1, 110.4, 111.5, 120.0, 140.6, 147.8, 150.9, 162.3, 164.6; IR (neat): 3338, 2926, 1599, 1506, 1456, 1431, 1381, 1261, 1216, 1092, 1023 cm<sup>-1</sup>; MS (FAB)  
10 m/z (relative intensity) 723 ([M + 2 x MeOH]<sup>+</sup>, 9), 691 ([M + MeOH]<sup>+</sup>, 15), 659 (M<sup>+</sup>, 100).

**Example 23: Synthesis of PBD monomer - (11*S*,11a*S*)-10-(*tert*-Butyloxycarbonyl)-8-hydroxy-7-methoxy-2-methylidene-11-(tetrahydroxy-pyran-2-yloxy)-1,2,3,10,11,11a-hexahydro-5*H*-pyrrolo[2,1-*c*][1,4]benzodiazepine-5-one (27)**

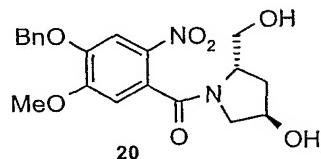
(a) *N*-[4-Benzyloxy-5-methoxy-2-nitro-benzoyl]-(2*S*,4*R*)-[4-hydroxypyrrolidine-2-carboxylate] (19)



20 A catalytic amount of dry DMF (2 drops) was added to a solution of acid 17 (5 g, 16.4 mmol, 1.0 equiv.) in dry DCM (70 mL) and oxalyl chloride (1.6 mL, 2.3 g, 18.1 mmol, 1.1 equiv.) and then the reaction mixture was stirred overnight under nitrogen. The resulting solution was added dropwise to a solution of the salt 18 (5.74 g, 18.1 mmol, 1.1 equiv.; *J. Org. Chem.*, 59, 13, 1994, 3621) and TEA (6.84 mL, 4.96 g, 49.2 mmol, 3.0 equiv.) in dry DCM (100 mL) at -20 °C (ethylene glycol/dry-ice). The reaction mixture was allowed to warm to room temperature and stirred overnight at which point TLC ( $\text{SiO}_2$ , EtOAc) revealed reaction completion. The mixture was washed with 1N-HCl (50 mL), water (50 mL), saturated aqueous NaHCO<sub>3</sub> (50 mL), brine (50 mL) and dried over MgSO<sub>4</sub>. The solvents were removed under vacuum to leave a yellow solid which was triturated with cold EtOAc to yield pure ester compound 19 (4.84  
25  
30

g, 11.2 mmol, 68%):  $[\alpha]^{28}_{D} = -57^{\circ}$  ( $c = 0.20$ ,  $\text{CHCl}_3$ );  $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ , 400 MHz) (Rotamers):  $\delta$  1.22-1.38 (m, 1-H rotamers), 2.10-2.45 (m, 1-H), 3.10-3.18 (m, 3-H), 3.47 (s,  $\text{CO}_2\text{Me}$  rotamers), 3.49-3.53 (m, 3-H), 3.71-3.75 (m, 3-H rotamers), 3.80 (s,  $\text{CO}_2\text{Me}$ ), 3.93 (s, 7-OMe rotamers), 3.97 (s, 7-OMe), 4.09-4.20 (m, 3-H rotamers, 11a-H rotamers), 4.42-4.49 (m, 2-H), 4.52-4.59 (m, 2-H rotamers), 4.83 (t, 11a-H,  $J = 8.0$  Hz), 5.20 (s, 2H,  $\text{OCH}_2\text{Ph}$ ), 6.80 (s, 6-H rotamers), 6.85 (s, 6-H), 7.32-7.46 (m, 5H, Ph), 7.69 (s, 1H, 9-H);  $^{13}\text{C}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ , 100 MHz) (Rotamers):  $\delta$  38.0, 39.4, 52.3, 52.5, 54.6, 56.3, 56.6, 56.8, 57.2, 59.0, 69.2, 70.0, 71.4, 109.1, 109.7, 126.5, 127.3, 127.6, 128.5, 128.8, 135.2, 135.3, 137.3, 148.2, 148.3, 154.5, 154.9, 166.7, 167.0, 172.4, 172.5; IR (neat): 3433, 2950, 1742, 1626, 1577, 1521, 1454, 1432, 1336, 1277, 1213, 1073, 750  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ ; MS (ES $^{+}$ )  $m/z$  (relative intensity) 431 ([ $M + \text{H}]^{+}$ , 100), 432 ( $[M + 2\text{H}]^{+}$ , 25).

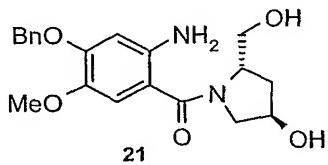
(b) *N-[4-Benzylxy-5-methoxy-2-nitro-benzoyl]- $(2S,4R)$ -[4-hydroxy-2-(hydroxymethyl)pyrrolidine] (20)*



A solution of the ester **19** (3.8 g, 8.83 mmol, 1.0 equiv.) in THF (100 mL) was cooled to 0 °C and treated with LiBH<sub>4</sub> (0.29 g, 13.25 mmol, 1.5 equiv.) in portions. After stirring for 30 min at 0 °C, the reaction mixture was allowed to warm to room temperature and stirred under a nitrogen atmosphere for 4 h at which time TLC ( $\text{SiO}_2$ , EtOAc) revealed complete consumption of ester **19**. The mixture was cooled to 0 °C again and water (100 mL) was carefully added followed by 1N HCl (250 mL) which provoked vigorous effervescence. After evaporation of the THF *in vacuo*, the mixture was neutralised to pH 7 with 1N NaOH. The aqueous solution was then extracted with EtOAc (4 x 70mL), the combined organic layers washed with brine (50 mL), dried ( $\text{MgSO}_4$ ), filtered and evaporated *in vacuo* to furnished the pure diol **20** (3.2 g, 7.96 mmol, 90%), which was used in the subsequent reaction without further

purification:  $[\alpha]^{29}_D = -96^\circ$  ( $c = 0.15$ ,  $\text{CHCl}_3$ );  $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ , 400 MHz):  $\delta$  1.85-1.99 (m, 1H, 1-H), 2.09-2.28 (m, 1H, 1-H), 3.11-3.20 (m, 1H, 11-H), 3.25-3.39 (m, 1H, 11-H), 3.70-3.82 (m, 1H, 3-H), 3.85-4.04 (m, 5H, 3-H, 7-OMe, OH), 4.30-4.38 (m, 1H, 11a-H), 4.46-4.61 (m, 2H, 2-H), 5.20 (m, 2H,  $\text{OCH}_2\text{Ph}$ ), 6.86 (s, 1H, 6-H), 7.29-7.50 (m, 5H, Ph), 7.74 (s, 1H, 9-H);  $^{13}\text{C}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ , 100 MHz):  $\delta$  37.1, 56.8, 56.9, 59.9, 65.0, 69.4, 71.4, 109.1, 109.3, 127.6, 127.7, 128.5, 128.8, 135.2, 137.2, 148.2, 155; IR (neat): 3357, 2938, 1614, 1576, 1520, 1454, 1434, 1333, 1276, 1220, 1069, 1048, 1006, 730, 698, 647  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ ; MS (ES $^+$ )  $m/z$  (relative intensity) 426 ( $[M + \text{Na}]^{+\cdot}$ , 5), 403 ( $[M + \text{H}]^{+\cdot}$ , 100), 404 ( $[M + 2\text{H}]^{+\cdot}$ , 40).

(c) *N-[2-Amino-4-benzyloxy-5-methoxy-benzoyl]-(2S,4R)-[4-hydroxy-2-(hydroxymethyl)pyrrolidine] (21)*



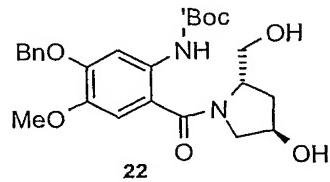
15

A mixture of diol **20** (26 g, 64.6 mmol, 1.0 equiv.) and  $\text{SnCl}_2 \cdot 2\text{H}_2\text{O}$  (72.9 g, 323 mmol, 5.0 equiv.) in MeOH (300 mL), was heated at reflux and the progress of the reaction monitored by TLC (EtOAc). After 3 h, the MeOH was evaporated *in vacuo* and the resulting residue was cooled and treated carefully with saturated  $\text{NaHCO}_3$  (400 mL). The mixture was diluted with EtOAc (800 mL), and after 12 h stirring at room temperature the inorganic precipitate was removed by filtration through celite. The organic layer was separated, washed with brine (100 mL), dried ( $\text{MgSO}_4$ ), filtered and evaporated *in vacuo* to give a brown solid **21** which was used in the next reaction without further purification:  $[\alpha]^{29}_D = -69^\circ$  ( $c = 0.13$ ,  $\text{CHCl}_3$ );  $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ , 400 MHz):  $\delta$  1.70-1.82 (m, 1H, 1-H), 2.06-2.19 (m, 1H, 1-H), 3.52-3.85 (m, 9H, 3-H, 11-H, 7-OMe, 2 x OH), 4.26-4.72 (m, 1H, 11a-H), 4.47-4.60 (m, 1H, 2-H), 5.10 (s, 2H,  $\text{OCH}_2\text{Ph}$ ), 6.26 (s, 1H, 9-H), 6.78 (s, 1H, 6-H), 7.29-7.36 (m, 7H, Ph, NH<sub>2</sub>);  $^{13}\text{C}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ , 100 MHz):  $\delta$  37.0, 57.1, 58.5, 59.0, 66.2, 69.4, 70.7, 103.4, 112.4, 112.9, 127.1, 128.0, 128.6, 136.5, 140.0,

141.9, 151.0, 172.8; IR (neat): 3358, 2939, 1619, 1589, 1512, 1455, 1432, 1408, 1263, 1231, 1171, 1113, 1012, 787, 735, 698, 644 cm<sup>-1</sup>; MS (ES<sup>+</sup>) m/z (relative intensity) 395 ([M + Na]<sup>+</sup>, 4), 373 ([M + H]<sup>+</sup>, 70), 374 ([M + 2H]<sup>+</sup>, 40), 256 (100), 257 (45).

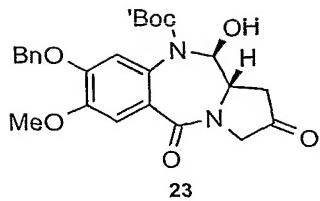
5

(d) *N-[4-Benzylxyloxy-5-methoxy-2-(tert-butylloxycarbonylamino)benzoyl]-(2S,4R)-[4-hydroxy-2-(hydroxymethyl)pyrrolidine] (22)*



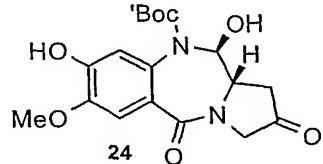
10 A solution of amine **21** (24 g, 64.6 mmol, 1.0 equiv.) and Di-*tert*-butyl dicarbonate (14.12 g, 64.6 mmol, 1.0 equiv.) in THF (300 mL) was heated at reflux overnight. The reaction mixture was allowed to cool to room temperature and excess THF was removed under reduced pressure to give the crude product. The residue was subjected to flash column chromatography (SiO<sub>2</sub>, 30% EtOAc-hexane) to afford the product **22** (18.29 g, 38.75 mmol, 60%) as a yellow oil: [α]<sup>25</sup><sub>D</sub> = -46° (c = 0.15, CHCl<sub>3</sub>); <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, 400 MHz): δ 1.46 (s, 9H, Boc), 1.71-1.84 (m, 1H, 1-H), 2.15-2.24 (m, 1H, 1-H), 2.78 (bs, 1H, OH), 3.54-3.76 (m, 3H, 3-H, 11-H), 3.77-3.94 (m, 4H, 3-H, 7-OMe), 4.26-4.43 (m, 1H, 11a-H), 5.15 (d, 2H, J = 4.54 Hz, OCH<sub>2</sub>Ph), 6.79 (s, 1H, 6-H), 7.26-7.49 (m, 6H, 9-H, Ph), 7.72 (s, 1H, NH); <sup>13</sup>C NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, 100 MHz): δ 28.3, 37.2, 56.7, 59.4, 69.7, 70.8, 80.8, 108.1, 111.5, 118.8, 127.6, 128.1, 128.6, 130.4, 136.2, 145.1, 150.1, 153.6; IR (neat): 3358, 2971, 1717, 1597, 1519, 1454, 1432, 1404, 1367, 1241, 1157, 1118, 1016, 773, 698 cm<sup>-1</sup>; MS (ES<sup>+</sup>) m/z (relative intensity) 473 (M<sup>+</sup>, 100), 474 ([M + 2H]<sup>+</sup>, 30), 256 (74), 373 (57), 416 (38).

(e) *(11*S*,11*a**S*)-8-Benzylxyloxy-10-(tert-butyloxycarbonyl)-11-hydroxy-7-methoxy-2-oxo-1,2,3,10,11,11*a*-hexahydro-5*H*-pyrrolo[2,1-*c*][1,4]benzodiazepine-5-one (23)*



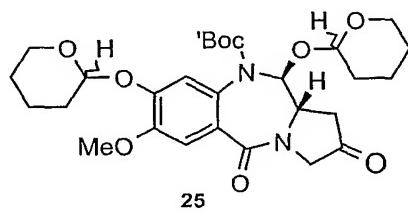
BAIB (17 g, 52.96 mmol, 5.0 equiv.) and TEMPO (0.17 g, 1.05 mmol, 0.1 equiv.) were added to a solution of Boc protected amine alcohol **22** (5.0 g, 10.59 mmol, 1.0 equiv.) in DCM (50 mL) and the mixture was allowed to stir overnight. When the reaction was complete as indicated by TLC ( $\text{SiO}_2$ , 50% EtOAc-hexane), the reaction mixture was diluted with DCM (100 mL) and washed with saturated  $\text{Na}_2\text{S}_2\text{O}_3$  (60 mL). The aqueous layer was extracted with DCM (2 x 50 mL) and the combined organic layers were washed with brine (50 mL) and dried ( $\text{MgSO}_4$ ). Removal of excess solvent under reduced pressure afforded a crude solid which was washed with cold EtOAc to give cyclized compound **23** (2.3 g, 4.9 mmol, 46%) as a white solid:  
 $[\alpha]^{25}_{\text{D}} = +117^\circ$  ( $c = 0.14$ ,  $\text{CHCl}_3$ );  $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ , 400 MHz):  $\delta$  1.28 (s, 9H, Boc), 2.68-2.73 (m, 1H, 1-H), 2.90-3.02 (m, 1H, 1-H), 3.75-4.01 (m, 6H, 3-H, 11a-H, OH, 7-OMe), 4.22-4.46 (m, 1H, 3-H), 5.03-5.26 (m, 2H,  $\text{OCH}_2\text{Ph}$ ), 5.55-5.69 (m, 1H, 11-H), 6.68 (s, 1H, 9-H), 7.23 (s, 1H, 6-H), 7.33-7.45 (m, 5H, Ph);  $^{13}\text{C}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ , 100 MHz):  $\delta$  28.0, 40.3, 52.6, 56.2, 56.6, 71.1, 86.0, 110.7, 114.6, 123.9, 127.0, 128.2, 128.6, 128.8, 129.1, 130.3, 136.2, 149.0, 150.5, 167.7, 207.9; IR (neat): 3389, 2978, 1762, 1700, 1637, 1603, 1511, 1456, 1431, 1368, 1329, 1256, 1221, 1157, 1118, 1059, 767  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ ; MS ( $\text{ES}^+$ )  $m/z$  (relative intensity) 469 ( $M^{+}$ , 27), 413 (100), 351 (61), 256 (30).

(f) *(11S,11aS)-10-(tert-Butyloxycarbonyl)-8,11-dihydroxy-7-methoxy-2-oxo-1,2,3,10,11,11a-hexahydro-5H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepine-5-one (24)*



A catalytic amount of 10% palladium on carbon (0.23 g) was added to a solution of cyclized compound **23** (2.3 g, 4.9 mmol) in absolute alcohol (50 mL). The reaction mixture was hydrogenated for 4 h at 30 Psi. When the reaction was complete as indicated by 5 TLC ( $\text{SiO}_2$ , 50% EtOAc-hexane) the reaction mixture was filtered through Celite, and removal of excess solvent under reduced pressure afforded the phenol **24** (4.7 g, 2.64 mmol, 53%) as a white solid:  $[\alpha]^{25}_{\text{D}} = +115^\circ$  ( $c = 0.10$ , MeOH);  $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ , 400 MHz):  $\delta$  1.39 (s, 9H, Boc), 2.68-2.80 (m, 1H, 1-H), 2.87-3.02 (m, 1H, 1-H), 10 3.84-4.06 (m, 6H, 3-H, 11a-H, OH, 7-OMe), 4.22-4.35 (m, 1H, 3-H), 5.53-5.71 (m, 1H, 11-H), 6.02 (s, 1H, OH), 6.73 (s, 1H, 9-H), 7.20 (s, 1H, 6-H);  $^{13}\text{C}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ , 100 MHz):  $\delta$  28.1, 40.4, 52.6, 56.2, 56.7, 85.9, 110.1, 115.9, 123.1, 129.9, 145.9, 148.2, 167.8, 15 208.1; IR (neat): 3355, 2977, 1760, 1685, 1606, 1515, 1469, 1415, 1369, 1332, 1297, 1212, 1162, 1132, 1042, 767  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ ; MS (ES $^+$ )  $m/z$  (relative intensity) 379 ( $M^{+}$ , 93), 380 ( $[M + 2\text{H}]^{+}$ , 25), 364 (100), 396 (75), 420 (45).

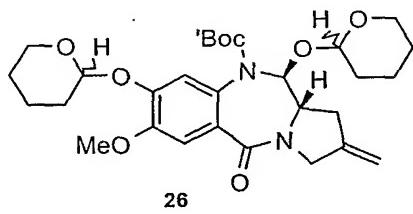
(g) (11*S*,11a*S*)-10-(tert-Butyloxycarbonyl)-7-methoxy-2-oxo-8,11-di(tetrahydroxy-pyran-2-yloxy)-1,2,3,10,11,11a-hexahydro-5*H*-pyrrolo[2,1-*c*][1,4]benzodiazepine-5-one (**25**)



A catalytic amount of PTSA was added to a solution of DHP (4.8 mL, 25 52.8 mmol, 10.0 equiv.) in EtOAc (10 mL) at 0 °C. After stirring for 10 minutes, the phenolic compound **24** (2.0 g, 5.28 mmol, 1.0 equiv.) was added portionwise to the mixture and stirred until the disappearance of starting material was observed by TLC ( $\text{SiO}_2$ , 50% EtOAc-hexane). The mixture was diluted with EtOAc (100 mL), washed with saturated  $\text{NaHCO}_3$  (30 mL), brine (30 mL) and dried ( $\text{MgSO}_4$ ). Removal of excess solvent under reduced pressure afforded a crude solid which was subjected to flash column chromatography ( $\text{SiO}_2$ , 30% EtOAc-hexane) to give the protected compound **25** (1.8 g, 3.4 mmol,

65% yield, mixture of diastereomers from THP protecting group):  
 $[\alpha]^{24}_D = +110^\circ$  ( $c = 0.10$ ,  $\text{CHCl}_3$ );  $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ , 400 MHz):  $\delta$  1.34 (s, 18H, Boc), 1.42-1.81 (m, 18H, THP), 1.83-2.14 (m, 6H, THP), 2.55-2.65 (m, 1H, 1-H), 2.82-3.00 (m, 3H, 1-H), 3.51-3.66 (m, 4H, THP), 5 3.82-4.05 (m, 14H, 3-H, 11a-H, 7-OMe, THP), 4.23-4.44 (m, 2H, 3-H), 4.96-5.06 (m, 1H, THP), 5.12-5.20 (m, 1H, THP), 5.26-5.41 (m, 1H, THP), 5.43-5.50 (m, 1H, THP), 5.77-5.86 (d, 1H, 11-H), 5.90-6.01 (d, 1H, 11-H), 6.86-6.90 (2 x s, 1H, 9-H), 7.15-7.22 (3 x s, 3H, 6-H, 9-H);  $^{13}\text{C}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ , 100 MHz):  $\delta$  18.2, 18.6, 18.8, 20.0, 10 20.2, 20.6, 25.1, 25.2 (x 2), 27.9, 28.0, 28.1, 28.2, 30.0, 30.1, 30.6, 30.9, 31.1, 31.2, 40.4, 40.8, 52.7, 52.8, 56.2, 56.9, 57.0, 61.6, 62.0, 62.1, 63.6, 63.9, 64.7, 81.5, 88.3, 91.2, 96.6, 100.4, 110.5, 110.9, 118.2, 125.9, 129.5, 129.6, 148.6, 148.7, 168.1, 168.2, 208.3, 208.5; IR (neat): 2941, 1762, 1702, 1649, 1604, 15 1508, 1454, 1429, 1393, 1367, 1324, 1256, 1197, 1162, 1115, 1072, 1021, 960, 904, 870, 731  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ ; MS (ES $^+$ )  $m/z$  (relative intensity) 547 ( $M^{+}$ , 56), 548 ([ $M + 2\text{H}]^{+}$ , 20), 261 (100), 345 (94).

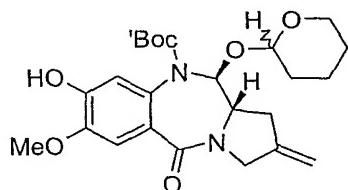
(h) (11*S*,11a*S*)-10-(tert-Butyloxycarbonyl)-7-methoxy-2-methylidene-20 8,11-di(tetrahydroxy-pyran-2-yloxy)-1,2,3,10,11,11a-hexahydro-5*H*-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepine-5-one (26)



Potassium *tert*-butoxide (4.1 g, 36 mmol, 10.0 equiv.) was added portionwise to a suspension of methyltriphenylphosphonium bromide (12.8 g, 36 mmol, 10.0 equiv.) in THF (50 mL) at 0 °C, under nitrogen. After stirring for 2 h at 0 °C, a solution of the ketone 25 (2.0 g, 3.6 mmol, 1.0 equiv.) was added dropwise and the mixture allowed to warm to room temperature. After stirring overnight, the reaction mixture was diluted with EtOAc (250 mL) and water (250 mL) and the organic layer separated, washed with brine, dried ( $\text{MgSO}_4$ ), filtered and evaporated *in vacuo* to give a dark red oil, which was shown to contain a mixture of several

components by TLC ( $\text{SiO}_2$ , 50% EtOAc-hexane). Purification by flash chromatography ( $\text{SiO}_2$ , 30% EtOAc-hexane) isolated the pure olefin **26** as a white solid (1.4 g, 2.59 mmol, 72% yield, mixture of diastereomers from THP protecting group:  $[\alpha]^{22}_{\text{D}} = +105^\circ$  ( $c = 0.20$ , CHCl<sub>3</sub>); <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, 400 MHz):  $\delta$  1.32 (s, 18H, Boc), 1.40-1.81 (m, 18H, THP), 1.83-2.14 (m, 6H, THP), 2.50-2.59 (m, 1H, 1-H), 2.69-2.95 (m, 3H, 1-H), 3.51-3.72 (m, 6H, 11a-H, THP), 3.82-4.03 (m, 10H, 7-OMe, THP), 4.04-4.18 (m, 2H, 3-H), 4.23-4.38 (m, 2H, 3-H), 4.96-5.19 (m, 6H, 2a-H, THP), 5.22-5.48 (m, 2H, THP), 5.62-5.71 (d, 1H, 11-H), 5.75-5.87 (d, 1H, 11-H), 6.77-6.90 (2 x s, 1H, 9-H), 7.10-7.20 (3 x s, 3H, 6-H, 9-H); <sup>13</sup>C NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, 100 MHz):  $\delta$  18.3, 18.7, 18.8, 19.9, 20.0, 20.6, 25.1, 25.2, 25.3, 27.9, 28.0, 28.2, 30.1, 30.2, 30.4, 30.7, 31.0, 31.2, 31.3, 35.1, 35.5, 50.7, 56.2, 59.8, 60.0, 61.6, 62.0, 62.1, 63.4, 63.6, 64.5, 81.1, 81.2, 88.0, 90.9, 96.0, 96.3, 96.5, 96.7, 98.4, 99.6, 100.3, 109.4, 109.5, 110.3, 110.7, 118.1, 120.3, 127.3, 129.6, 129.7, 129.8, 142.3, 147.9, 148.1, 148.8, 149.4, 155.2, 168.1, 168.2; IR (neat): 2940, 2866, 1702, 1639, 1604, 1508, 1453, 1431, 1393, 1367, 1324, 1198, 1162, 1114, 1072, 1019, 960, 906, 870, 727, 644 cm<sup>-1</sup>; MS (ES<sup>+</sup>) *m/z* (relative intensity) 545 (*M*<sup>+</sup>, 38), 546 ([*M* + 2H]<sup>+</sup>, 15), 343 (100), 259 (95), 344 (23).

(i) (11*S*,11a*S*)-10-(tert-Butyloxycarbonyl)-8-hydroxy-7-methoxy-2-methylidene-11-(tetrahydroxy-pyan-2-yloxy)-1,2,3,10,11,11a-hexahydro-5*H*-pyrrolo[2,1-*c*][1,4]benzodiazepine-5-one (27)

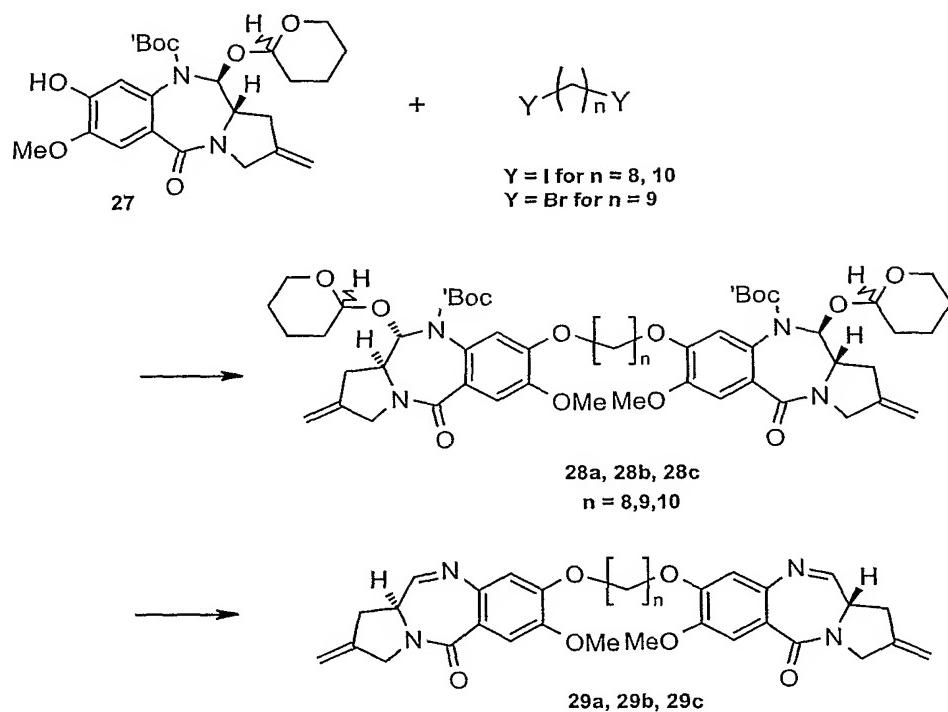


27

A solution of THF/AcOH/H<sub>2</sub>O (2: 1: 1, 5 mL) was added to the olefin **26** (1.8 g, 3.3 mmol) and the resulting mixture was stirred for 3 h at which point TLC ( $\text{SiO}_2$ , 50% EtOAc-hexane) revealed complete reaction. The mixture was then neutralized with saturated NaHCO<sub>3</sub> and extracted with EtOAc (3 x 30 mL) and the combined organic

layers were washed with brine (50 mL) and dried ( $\text{MgSO}_4$ ). Removal of excess solvent under reduced pressure gave the crude product. The residue was subjected to flash chromatography ( $\text{SiO}_2$ , 50% EtOAc-hexane) to afford the product 27 (1.34 g, 2.9 mmol, 87 % yield, mixture of diastereomers from THP protecting group):  $[\alpha]^{27}\text{D} = +81^\circ$  ( $c = 0.16$ ,  $\text{CHCl}_3$ );  $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ , 400 MHz):  $\delta$  1.32 (s, 18H, Boc), 1.45-1.64 (m, 8H, THP), 1.66-1.84 (m, 4H, THP), 2.50-2.58 (m, 1H, 1-H), 2.68-2.80 (m, 1H, 1-H), 2.84-2.96 (m, 2H, 1-H), 3.51-3.67 (m, 4H, 11a-H, THP), 3.87-4.00 (m, 8H, 7-OMe, THP), 4.04-4.18 (m, 2H, 3-H), 4.23-4.38 (m, 2H, 3-H), 4.96-5.19 (m, 6H, 2a-H, THP), 5.65-5.72 (d, 1H, 11-H), 5.75-5.88 (d, 1H, 11-H), 5.97 (s, 1H, 8-OH), 6.00 (s, 1H, 8-OH), 6.63 (s, 1H, 9-H), 6.92 (s, 1H, 9-H), 7.17 (s, 1H, 6-H), 7.21 (s, 1H, 6-H);  $^{13}\text{C}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ , 100 MHz):  $\delta$  20.0, 20.7, 25.1, 25.2, 28.0, 28.1, 29.7, 30.8, 31.3, 35.1, 35.4, 50.7, 56.1, 56.2, 59.8, 60.0, 63.6, 64.6, 88.0, 91.0, 96.1, 100.7, 109.4, 109.8, 116.4, 117.0, 130.3, 130.5, 142.0, 145.8, 146.0, 147.5, 147.7, 167.3, 167.5; IR (neat): 2940, 2851, 1703, 1630, 1512, 1467, 1440, 1407, 1391, 1367, 1326, 1200, 1161, 1118, 1072, 1019, 910, 730  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ ; MS (ES $^+$ )  $m/z$  (relative intensity) 461 ( $M^{+}$ , 75), 462 ([ $M + 2\text{H}$ ] $^{+}$ , 20), 259 (100), 260 (30), 359 (21).

**Examples 24-: Synthesis of C-2 unsaturated PBD dimmers linked at the C-8 position**



5      **Example 24 (n=8)**

(a)            *1,1'-[ (Octane-1,8-diyl) dioxy] bis[(11*S*,11*a**S*)-10-(tert-butyloxycarbonyl)-7-methoxy-11-(tetrahydro-pyran-2-yloxy)-2-methylidene-1,2,3,10,11,11*a*-hexahydro-5*H*-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepine-5-one] (28a)*

10     1,8-Diodooctane (53 mg, 0.14 mmol, 0.5 equiv.) was added to the mixture of monomer 27 (134 mg, 0.29 mmol, 1.0 equiv.) and potassium carbonate (60 mg, 0.58 mmol, 2.0 equiv.) in dry DMF (30 mL), and the resulting mixture was heated to 90 °C under a nitrogen atmosphere for 4 h. Removal of excess solvent under reduced pressure afforded a crude solid, which was subjected to flash column chromatography ( $\text{SiO}_2$ , 75% EtOAc-hexane) to afford the dimerized compound 28a (77 mg, 0.074 mmol, 51% yield, mixture of diastereomers from THP protecting group) as a solid:  $[\alpha]^{26}_D = +63^\circ$  ( $c = 0.11$ ,  $\text{CHCl}_3$ );  $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ , 400 MHz):  $\delta$  1.30-1.64 (m, 68H, 14-H, 15-H, Boc, THP), 1.71-1.94 (m, 16H, 13-H, THP), 2.51-2.62

15  
20

(m, 2H, 1-H), 2.72-2.83 (m, 2H, 1-H), 2.87-2.98 (m, 4H, 1-H), 3.53-3.72 (m, 8H, 11a-H, THP), 3.85-4.19 (m, 28H, 3-H, 12-H, 7-OMe, THP), 4.27-4.38 (m, 4H, 3-H), 5.01-5.20 (m, 12H, 2a-H, THP), 5.68-5.76 (d, 2H, 11-H), 5.78-5.89 (d, 2H, 11-H), 6.51 (s, 2H, 9-H), 6.87 (s, 2H, 9-H), 7.18 (s, 2H, 6-H), 7.22 (s, 2H, 6-H);  $^{13}\text{C}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ , 100 MHz):  $\delta$  20.0, 20.5, 25.2, 25.9, 28.1, 28.2, 29.0 (x 2), 29.3, 31.0, 31.3, 35.1, 35.4, 50.6, 56.1 (x 2), 60.0, 63.5, 64.4, 68.9, 69.2, 91.1, 96.4, 100.3, 109.4, 110.0, 110.5, 114.4, 114.9, 129.8, 142.8, 148.6, 148.9, 167.2, 167.4; IR (neat): 2938, 2857, 1702, 1643, 1604, 1511, 1454, 1430, 1400, 1367, 1325, 1273, 1254, 1211, 1163, 1118, 1072, 1019, 911, 869, 729  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ ; MS (ES $^+$ )  $m/z$  (relative intensity) 1054 ([ $M + \text{Na}]^+$ , 9), 1031 ([ $M + \text{H}]^+$ , 100), 1032 ([ $M + 2\text{H}]^+$ , 65), 929 (46), 829 (38), 1048 (34).

15 (b) 1,1'-[(Octane-1,8-diyl)dioxy]bis[(11aS)-7-methoxy-2-methylene-1,2,3,11a-tetrahydro-5H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepine-5-one] (29a)

95% TFA (2 mL) was added dropwise to dimer compound 28a (77 mg, 0.074 mmol) at 0 °C which was stirred for 1 h and then poured into saturated aqueous  $\text{NaHCO}_3$  (30 mL). The mixture was extracted with chloroform (3 x 20 mL) and the organic layer was then washed with water (20 mL), brine (20 mL), dried ( $\text{MgSO}_4$ ) and filtered. The excess solvent was removed under reduced pressure to give the crude product, which was subjected to flash column chromatography ( $\text{SiO}_2$ , 2% methanol-chloroform). Removal of excess eluent under reduced pressure without heating afforded the final product 29a (39 mg, 0.062 mmol, 84%) as a solid:  $[\alpha]^{29}\text{D} = +428^\circ$  ( $c = 0.07$ ,  $\text{CHCl}_3$ );  $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ , 400 MHz):  $\delta$  1.33-1.54 (m, 8H, 14-H, 15-H), 1.78-1.93 (m, 4H, 13-H), 2.86-2.97 (m, 2H, 1-H), 3.04-3.17 (m, 2H, 1-H), 3.83-3.89 (m, 2H, 11a-H), 3.93 (s, 6H, 7-OMe), 3.99-4.12 (m, 4H, 12-H), 4.28 (s, 4H, 3-H), 5.16-5.19 (m, 4H, 2a-H), 6.79 (s, 2H, 9-H), 7.49 (s, 2H, 6-H), 7.66 (d, 2H,  $J = 4.42$  Hz, 11-H);  $^{13}\text{C}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ , 100 MHz):  $\delta$  25.2, 25.8, 28.8, 29.2, 35.5, 51.3, 53.8, 56.1, 58.4, 69.0, 109.3, 110.4, 111.4, 119.6, 140.7, 141.7, 147.9, 151.0, 162.4, 164.8; IR (neat): 3310, 2932, 2855, 1598, 1503, 1463, 1451, 1429, 1381, 1260, 1216, 1096, 1013, 911, 786, 729  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ ;

MS (ES<sup>+</sup>) *m/z* (relative intensity) 627 ([M + H]<sup>+</sup>, 100), 628 ([M + 2H]<sup>+</sup>, 53), 332 (92), 323 (61).

**Example 25 (n=9)**

(a) *1,1'-(Nonane-1,9-diyl)dioxybis[(11*S*,11*a**S*)-10-(tert-butyloxycarbonyl)-7-methoxy-11-(tetrahydro-pyran-2-yloxy)-2-methylidene-1,2,3,10,11,11*a*-hexahydro-5*H*-pyrrolo[2,1-*c*][1,4]benzodiazepine-5-one] (28b)*

1,9-Dibromomononane (35.75 mg, 0.125 mmol, 0.5 equiv.) was added to the mixture of monomer **27** (115 mg, 0.25 mmol, 1.0 equiv.), potassium carbonate (53 mg, 0.50 mmol, 2.0 equiv.) and a catalytic amount of potassium iodide (1 mg) in dry DMF (30 mL), and the resulting mixture was heated to 90 °C under a nitrogen atmosphere for 5 h. Removal of excess solvent under reduced pressure afforded a crude solid, which was subjected to flash column chromatography (SiO<sub>2</sub>, 50% EtOAc-hexane) to afford the dimerized compound **28b** (89 mg, 0.085 mmol, 68% yield, mixture of diastereomers from THP protecting group) as a solid: [α]<sup>29</sup><sub>D</sub> = +36° (c = 0.11, CHCl<sub>3</sub>); <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, 400 MHz): δ 1.25-1.67 (m, 72H, 14-H, 15-H, 16-H, Boc, THP), 1.70-1.91 (m, 16H, 13-H, THP), 2.51-2.58 (m, 2H, 1-H), 2.72-2.81 (m, 2H, 1-H), 2.84-2.97 (m, 4H, 1-H), 3.51-3.65 (m, 8H, 11*a*-H, THP), 3.85-4.19 (m, 28H, 3-H, 12-H, 7-OMe, THP), 4.26-4.38 (m, 4H, 3-H), 5.00-5.18 (m, 12H, 2*a*-H, THP), 5.65-5.74 (d, 2H, 11-H), 5.76-5.88 (d, 2H, 11-H), 6.49 (s, 2H, 9-H), 6.85 (s, 2H, 9-H), 7.16 (s, 2H, 6-H), 7.19 (s, 2H, 6-H); <sup>13</sup>C NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, 100 MHz): δ 20.2, 25.2, 25.9, 28.1, 28.2, 29.0, 29.3, 29.4, 31.0, 31.1, 35.1, 35.4, 50.6, 56.1, 59.9, 60.0, 63.5, 68.9, 69.2, 91.1, 96.2, 100.3, 109.3, 110.4, 110.5, 114.8, 114.9, 129.8, 142.1, 148.6, 148.9, 167.2; IR (neat): 2935, 2856, 1704, 1645, 1604, 1511, 1454, 1430, 1401, 1367, 1325, 1255, 1210, 1163, 1119, 1020, 907, 729 cm<sup>-1</sup>; MS (ES<sup>+</sup>) *m/z* (relative intensity) 1068 ([M + Na]<sup>+</sup>, 13), 1045 ([M + H]<sup>+</sup>, 100), 1046 ([M + 2H]<sup>+</sup>, 65), 943 (42), 843 (28).

(b) *1,1'-(Nonane-1,9-diyl)dioxybis[(11*a**S*)-7-methoxy-2-methylene-1,2,3,11*a*-tetrahydro-5*H*-pyrrolo[2,1-*c*][1,4]benzodiazepine-5-one] (29b)*

95% TFA (2 mL) was added dropwise to dimer compound **28b** (89 mg, 0.085 mmol) at 0 °C which was stirred for 1 h and then poured into saturated aqueous NaHCO<sub>3</sub> (30 mL). The mixture was extracted with chloroform (3 x 20 mL) and the organic layer was washed with water (20 mL), brine (20 mL), dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>) and filtered. The excess solvent was removed under reduced pressure to give the crude product, which was subjected to flash column chromatography (SiO<sub>2</sub>, 2% methanol-chloroform). Removal of excess eluent under reduced pressure without heating afforded the final product **29b** (30 mg, 0.046 mmol, 55%) as a solid:  $[\alpha]^{27}_D = +308^\circ$  (*c* = 0.24, CHCl<sub>3</sub>); <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, 400 MHz):  $\delta$  1.30-1.39 (m, 6H, 15-H, 16-H), 1.40-1.50 (m, 4H, 14-H), 1.82-1.91 (m, 4H, 13-H), 2.89-2.97 (m, 2H, 1-H), 3.06-3.16 (m, 2H, 1-H), 3.81-3.90 (m, 2H, 11a-H), 3.93 (s, 6H, 7-OMe), 3.98-4.10 (m, 4H, 12-H), 4.28 (s, 4H, 3-H), 5.16-5.19 (m, 4H, 2a-H), 6.79 (s, 2H, 9-H), 7.48 (s, 2H, 6-H), 7.66 (d, 2H, *J* = 4.44 Hz, 11-H); <sup>13</sup>C NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, 100 MHz):  $\delta$  25.8, 28.8, 29.2, 29.4, 35.2, 51.3, 53.8, 56.2, 69.0, 109.3, 110.3, 111.3, 119.5, 140.6, 141.7, 151.0, 162.4, 164.8; IR (neat): 2928, 2854, 1624, 1599, 1506, 1464, 1429, 1381, 1261, 1216, 1096, 729 cm<sup>-1</sup>; MS (ES<sup>+</sup>) *m/z* (relative intensity) 641 ([*M* + H]<sup>+</sup>, 100), 642 ([*M* + 2H]<sup>+</sup>, 52), 339 (97).

**Example 26 (n=10)**

(a) *1,1'-(Decane-1,10-diyl)dioxybis[(11*S*,11*a**S*)-10-(tert-butylloxycarbonyl)-7-methoxy-11-(tetrahydro-pyran-2-yloxy)-2-methylidene-1,2,3,10,11,11*a*-hexahydro-5*H*-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepine-5-one] (28c)*

1,10-Diiododecane (49.26 mg, 0.125 mmol, 0.5 equiv.) was added to the mixture of monomer **27** (115 mg, 0.25 mmol, 1.0 equiv.) and potassium carbonate (53 mg, 0.50 mmol, 2.0 equiv.) in dry DMF (30 mL), and the resulting mixture was heated to 90 °C under a nitrogen atmosphere for 5 h. Removal of excess solvent under reduced pressure afforded a crude solid, which was subjected to flash column chromatography (SiO<sub>2</sub>, 60% EtOAc-hexane) to afford the dimerized compound **28c** (90 mg, 0.084 mmol, 67% yield, mixture of diastereomers from THP protecting group) as a solid:  $[\alpha]^{27}_D = +22^\circ$

( $c = 0.11$ ,  $\text{CHCl}_3$ );  $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ , 400 MHz):  $\delta$  1.26-1.65 (m, 76H, 14-H, 15-H, 16-H, Boc, THP), 1.72-1.90 (m, 16H, 13-H, THP), 2.55-2.95 (m, 8H, 1-H), 3.53-3.69 (m, 8H, 11a-H, THP), 3.85-4.15 (m, 28H, 3-H, 12-H, 7-OMe, THP), 4.25-4.36 (m, 4H, 3-H), 4.97-5.18 (m, 12H, 2a-H, THP), 5.65-5.88 (m, 4H, 11-H), 6.48 (s, 3H, 9-H), 6.85 (s, 1H, 9-H), 7.15-7.19 (2 x s, 4H, 6-H);  $^{13}\text{C}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ , 100 MHz):  $\delta$  20.0, 20.5, 25.2, 25.9, 28.1, 28.2, 29.0, 29.4, 29.5, 31.0, 31.3, 35.1, 35.4, 50.6, 56.1, 60.0, 63.5, 64.4, 68.9, 69.2, 91.1, 96.4, 100.3, 109.4, 110.0, 110.6, 114.3, 114.9, 128.4, 142.1, 148.8, 149.3, 167.3; IR (neat): 2933, 2854, 1703, 1643, 1603, 1512, 1454, 1430, 1402, 1367, 1324, 1254, 1209, 1162, 1118, 1018, 910, 860, 729  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ ; MS (ES $^+$ )  $m/z$  (relative intensity) 1059 ([ $M + \text{H}]^{+\cdot}$ , 100), 1060 ([ $M + 2\text{H}]^{+\cdot}$ , 70), 957 (50).

15 (b) *1,1'-(Decane-1,10-diyl)dioxy]bis[(11aS)-7-methoxy-2-methylene-1,2,3,11a-tetrahydro-5H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepine-5-one] (29c)*  
 95% TFA (2 mL) was added dropwise to dimer compound **28c** (90 mg, 0.084 mmol) at 0 °C which was stirred for 1 h and then poured into saturated aqueous  $\text{NaHCO}_3$  (30 mL). The mixture was extracted with chloroform (3 x 20 mL) and the organic layer was washed with water (20 mL), brine (20 mL), dried ( $\text{MgSO}_4$ ) and filtered. The excess solvent was removed under reduced pressure to give the crude product, which was subjected to flash column chromatography ( $\text{SiO}_2$ , 2% methanol-chloroform). Removal of excess eluent under reduced pressure without heating afforded the final product **29c** (34 mg, 0.052 mmol, 61%) as a solid:  $[\alpha]^{26}_{\text{D}} = +309^\circ$  ( $c = 0.31$ ,  $\text{CHCl}_3$ );  $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ , 400 MHz):  $\delta$  1.31-1.39 (m, 8H, 15-H, 16-H), 1.40-1.51 (m, 4H, 14-H), 1.80-1.93 (m, 4H, 13-H), 2.89-3.10 (m, 2H, 1-H), 3.06-3.19 (m, 2H, 1-H), 3.81-3.95 (m, 8H, 11a-H, 7-OMe), 3.98-4.11 (m, 4H, 12-H), 4.28 (s, 4H, 3-H), 5.16-5.18 (m, 4H, 2a-H), 6.80 (s, 2H, 9-H), 7.49 (s, 2H, 6-H), 7.66 (d, 2H,  $J = 4.56$  Hz, 11-H);  $^{13}\text{C}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ , 100 MHz):  $\delta$  25.8, 28.8, 29.2, 29.4, 35.2, 51.3, 53.8, 56.2, 69.0, 109.3, 110.4, 111.4, 119.5, 140.7, 141.7, 151.1, 162.4, 164.8; IR (neat): 2933, 1599, 1506, 1464, 1429, 1380, 1262,

1216, 1096, 729, 628 cm<sup>-1</sup>; MS (ES<sup>+</sup>) m/z (relative intensity) 655 ([M + H]<sup>+</sup>, 100), 656 ([M + 2H]<sup>+</sup>, 50), 346 (97).

Example 27 - Determination of DNA Cross-Linking ability and in  
5 vitro Cytotoxicity

(a) DNA Cross-linking

The extent of DNA cross-linking induced by each PBD dimer was determined using the electrophoretic assay method of Hartley, et al. (Hartley, J. A., Berardini, M. D., and Souhami, R. L. (1991) Anal. Biochem. 193, 131-134) based on the principle that, following complete denaturation of linear pBR322 DNA (~4,300 bp) to the single-stranded (SS) form, an interstrand cross-link results in renaturation to double-stranded (DS) in a neutral gel.

15 Closed-circular DNA was linearized with HindIII, then dephosphorylated and finally 5'-singly end-labelled using [ $\gamma^{32}\text{P}$ ]-ATP and polynucleotide kinase. Reactions containing 30-40 ng of DNA and the test compound were carried out in aqueous TEOA (25 mM triethanolamine, 1mM EDTA, pH 7.2) buffer at 37°C in a final volume of 50  $\mu\text{l}$  for 2 hours. Reactions were terminated by addition of an equal volume of stop solution (0.6 M NaOAc, 20 mM EDTA, 100  $\mu\text{g/ml}$  tRNA) followed by precipitation with ethanol. Following centrifugation, the supernatant was discarded and the pellet dried by lyophilization. Samples were re-suspended in 10  $\mu\text{l}$  of strand separation buffer (30% DMSO, 1 mM EDTA, 0.04% bromophenol blue and 0.04% xylene cyano) and denatured by heating to 90°C for 2.5 min, followed by immersion in an ice/water bath. Control non-denatured samples were re-suspended in 10  $\mu\text{l}$  of non-denaturing buffer solution (0.6% sucrose, 0.04% bromophenol blue in aqueous TAE buffer [40 mM Tris, 20 mM acetic acid, 2 mM EDTA, pH 8.1]) and loaded directly onto the gel for comparison.

30 Electrophoresis was carried out for 14-16 h at 40 V using a 0.8% submerged agarose gel (20  $\times$  25  $\times$  0.5 cm) in TAE buffer. Gels were dried under vacuum for 2 hour at 80°C onto one layer each of

Whatman 3MM and DE81 filter papers using a BioRad 583 gel dryer. Autoradiographs were obtained after exposure of Hyperfilm-MP film (Amersham plc, U.K.) to the dried gel for either 4 hour with a screen (or over night, without a screen, to obtain a sharper image). Film bands were quantitated using a BioRad GS-670 imaging laser densitometer. Percentage cross-linking was calculated by measuring the total DNA in each lane (summed density for the double-stranded [DS] and single-stranded [SS] bands) relative to the amount of cross-linked DNA (density of DS band alone). A dose-response curve was derived by plotting drug concentration against the determined percentage level of cross-linked DNA which was then analysed to determine the concentration of test compound that results in 50% cross-linked plasmid DNA ( $XL_{50}$ ).

15 (b) *In vitro* cytotoxicity

(i) K562 cells

K562 human chronic myeloid leukaemia cells were maintained in RPMI 1640 medium supplemented with 10% fetal calf serum and 2 mM glutamine at 37°C in a humidified atmosphere containing 5% CO<sub>2</sub> and were incubated with a specified dose of drug for 1 hour or 96 hours at 37°C in the dark. The incubation was terminated by centrifugation (5 min, 300 g) and the cells were washed once with drug-free medium. Following the appropriate drug treatment, the cells were transferred to 96-well microtiter plates (10<sup>4</sup> cells per well, 8 wells per sample). Plates were then kept in the dark at 37°C in a humidified atmosphere containing 5% CO<sub>2</sub>. The assay is based on the ability of viable cells to reduce a yellow soluble tetrazolium salt, 3-(4,5-dimethylthiazol-2-yl)-2,5-diphenyl-2H-tetrazolium bromide (MTT, Aldrich-Sigma), to an insoluble purple formazan precipitate. Following incubation of the plates for 4 days (to allow control cells to increase in number by approximately 10 fold), 20 µL of MTT solution (5 mg/mL in phosphate-buffered saline) was added to each well and the plates further incubated for 5 hours. The plates were then centrifuged for 5 minutes at 300 g and the bulk of the medium pipetted from the cell pellet leaving 10-20 µL per well. DMSO (200 µL) was

added to each well and the samples agitated to ensure complete mixing. The optical density was then read at a wavelength of 550 nm on a Titertek Multiscan ELISA plate reader, and a dose-response curve was constructed. For each curve, an IC<sub>50</sub> value was read as  
5 the dose required to reduce the final optical density to 50% of the control value.

(ii) NCI 60 cell screen

10 The National Cancer Institute (NCI), Bethesda, Maryland, USA has available an *in vitro* cytotoxicity screen which consists of approximately 60 human tumour cell lines against which compounds are tested at a minimum of five concentrations each differing 10-fold. A 48 hour continuous exposure protocol is used, where cell viability or growth is estimated with an SRB protein assay.

15 The test compounds were evaluated against approximately 60 human tumour cell lines. The NCI screening procedures were described in detail by Monks and co-workers (Monks, A *et al.*, Journal of the National Cancer Institute, 1991, 83, 757). Briefly, cell suspensions were diluted according to the particular cell type and the expected target cell density (5000-40,000 cells per well based on cell growth characteristics), and added by pipette (100 µL) into 96-well microtitre plates. The cells were allowed a preincubation period of 24 hours at 37°C for stabilisation.  
20 Dilutions at twice the intended test concentration were added at time zero in 100 µL aliquots to the wells. The test compounds were evaluated at five 10-fold dilutions (10<sup>-4</sup>, 10<sup>-5</sup>, 10<sup>-6</sup>, 10<sup>-7</sup> and 10<sup>-8</sup> µM). The test compounds were incubated for 48 hours in 5% CO<sub>2</sub> atmosphere and 100% humidity. The cells were then assayed using  
25 the sulphorhodamine B assay. A plate reader was used to read the optical densities and a microcomputer processed the readings into GI<sub>50</sub> values (in Moles), which is the dosage required to limit cell growth to 50%.

*Results*

Compound number	n	NCI GI <sub>50</sub> (μM)	IC <sub>50</sub> (μM) 1hr exposure	XL <sub>50</sub> (μM)
9a	3	8.91	>30	> 100
9b	4	28.1	>30	-
9c	5	10.2	>30	-
9d	6	4.0	>30	-
9e	7	2.69	>30	20
9f	8	1.17	9.72	1.8
9g	9	0.57	17.3	0.98
9h	10	1.12	16.13	0.17
9i	11	0.57	9.00	0.19
9j	12	0.21	9.12	> 100
16a	3	3.16	12.8	0.05
16b	4	2.51	2.5	1.00
16c	5	0.015	0.5	0.07
16d	6	0.31	1.0	0.75

Compound number	n	NCI GI <sub>50</sub> (μM)	IC <sub>50</sub> (μM) 96hr exposure	XL <sub>50</sub> (μM)
16e	7	0.28	-	-
16f	8	0.019	0.0045	1.4
16g	9	0.019	0.026	1.5
16h	10	0.054	0.352	5.0

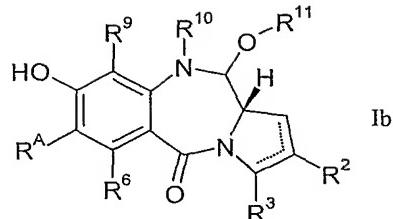
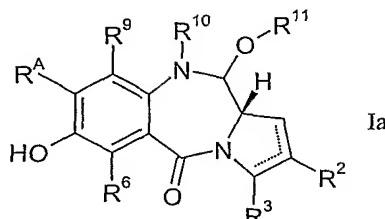
100

16i	11	0.22	0.689	-
16j	12	0.15	0.645	-

Compound number	n	NCI GI <sub>50</sub> (nM)	IC <sub>50</sub> (µM) 96hr exposure	XL <sub>50</sub> (µM)
29a	8	13.80	-	-
29b	9	20.89	33.8	1.50
29c	10	13.18	100	3.90

CLAIMS

1. A compound of formula Ia or Ib:



5 and salts, solvates, and chemically protected forms thereof, wherein:

the dotted lines indicate the optional presence of a double bond between C1 and C2 or C2 and C3;

10 R<sup>2</sup> and R<sup>3</sup> are independently selected from -H, =O, =CH<sub>2</sub>, -CN, -R, OR, halo, =CH-R, O-SO<sub>2</sub>-R, CO<sub>2</sub>R and COR;

R<sup>6</sup> and R<sup>9</sup> are independently selected from H, R, OH, OR, SH, SR, NH<sub>2</sub>, NHR, NRR', nitro, Me<sub>3</sub>Sn and halo;

where R and R' are independently selected from optionally substituted C<sub>1-12</sub> alkyl, C<sub>3-20</sub> heterocyclyl and C<sub>5-20</sub> aryl groups;

15 R<sup>A</sup> is selected from H, R, OR, SH, SR, NH<sub>2</sub>, NHR, NRR', nitro, Me<sub>3</sub>Sn and halo;

R<sup>10</sup> is a carbamate-based nitrogen protecting group; and

R<sup>11</sup> is an oxygen protecting group.

20 2. A compound according to claim 1, wherein R<sup>A</sup> is independently selected from H, OR, SH, SR, NH<sub>2</sub>, NHR, NRR' and halo.

25 3. A compound according to either claim 1 or claim 2, wherein R<sup>11</sup> is THP or a silyl oxygen protecting group.

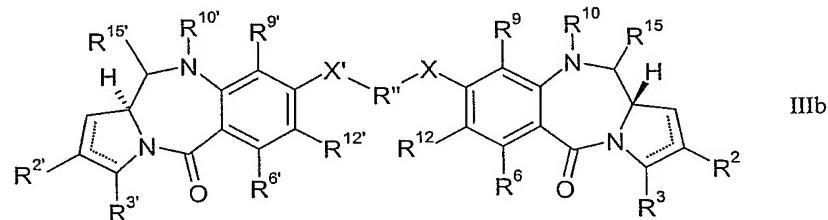
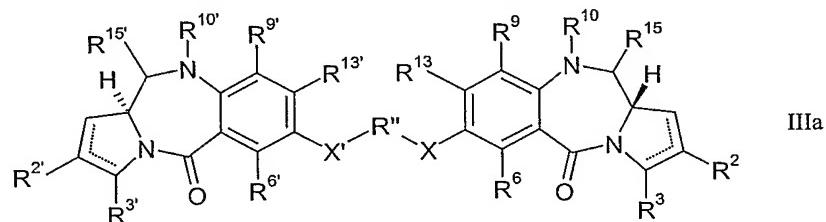
4. A compound according to any of the preceding claims, wherein R<sup>10</sup> is BOC or Troc.

5. A compound according to any one of the preceding claims, wherein R<sup>9</sup> is H.

6. A compound according to any one of the preceding claims, 5 wherein R<sup>2</sup> is R.

7. A compound according to any one of the preceding claims, wherein R<sup>6</sup> is selected from H, OH, OR, SH, NH<sub>2</sub>, nitro and halo.

10 8. A compound of formula IIIa or IIIb:



and salts and thereof, wherein:

the dotted lines indicate the optional presence of a double bond between C1 and C2 or C2 and C3;

15 R<sup>2</sup> and R<sup>3</sup> are independently selected from -H, =O, =CH<sub>2</sub>, -CN, -R, OR, halo, =CH-R, O-SO<sub>2</sub>-R, CO<sub>2</sub>R and COR; R<sup>6</sup>, R<sup>9</sup>, R<sup>12</sup> and R<sup>13</sup> are independently selected from H, R, OH, OR, SH, SR, NH<sub>2</sub>, NHR, NRR', nitro, Me<sub>3</sub>Sn and halo; where R and R' are independently selected from optionally 20 substituted C<sub>1-12</sub> alkyl, C<sub>3-20</sub> heterocyclyl and C<sub>5-20</sub> aryl groups; R<sup>10</sup> is a carbamate-based nitrogen protecting group and R<sup>15</sup> is either O-R<sup>11</sup>, wherein R<sup>11</sup> is an oxygen protecting group, or OH, or R<sup>10</sup> and R<sup>15</sup> together form a double bond between N10 and C11; and

where R'' is a C<sub>3-12</sub> alkylene group, which chain may be interrupted by one or more heteroatoms, e.g. O, S, NH, and/or aromatic rings, and each X is independently selected from O, S, or NH; and R<sup>2'</sup>, R<sup>3'</sup>, R<sup>6'</sup>, R<sup>9'</sup>, R<sup>10'</sup>, R<sup>12'</sup>, R<sup>13'</sup> and R<sup>15'</sup> are all independently selected from the same lists as previously defined for R<sup>2</sup>, R<sup>3</sup>, R<sup>6</sup>, R<sup>9</sup>, R<sup>10</sup>, R<sup>12</sup>, R<sup>13</sup> and R<sup>15</sup> respectively.

9. A compound according to claim 8, wherein the dimers are linked at the C8 position.

10

10. A compound according to claim 8, wherein the dimers are linked at the C7 position.

15

11. A compound according to either claim 9 or claim 10, wherein -X'-R''-X- of formula IIIa or IIIb is -O-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>-O-, where n is 3 to 12.

12. A compound according to claim 11, wherein n is 8 to 12.

20

13. A compound according to claim 12, wherein n is 8 to 11.

14. A compound according to claim 13, wherein n is 8 to 10.

15. A compound according to claim 14, wherein n is 8 or 9.

25

16. A compound according to any one of claims 8 to 15, wherein R<sup>15</sup> is O-R<sup>11</sup> and R<sup>11</sup> is THP or a silyl oxygen protecting group.

30

17. A compound according to any one of claims 8 to 16, wherein R<sup>10</sup> is BOC or Troc.

18. A compound according to any one of claims 8 to 15, wherein R<sup>10</sup> and R<sup>15</sup> together form a double bond between N10 and C11.

19. A compound according to any one of claims 8 to 18, wherein R<sup>9</sup> is H.

20. A compound according to any one of claims 8 to 19, wherein R<sup>2</sup>  
5 is R.

21. A compound according to any one of claims 8 to 20, wherein R<sup>6</sup> is selected from H, OH, OR, SH, NH<sub>2</sub>, nitro and halo.

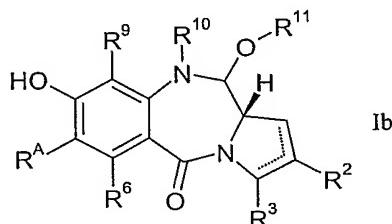
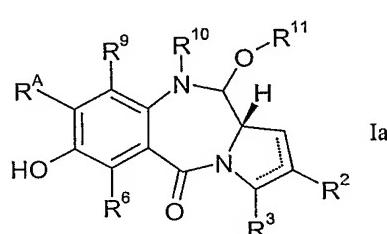
10 22. A compound according to any one of claims 8 to 21 for use in  
a method of therapy.

23. A pharmaceutical composition containing a compound of any one  
of claims 8 to 21, and a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier or  
diluent.

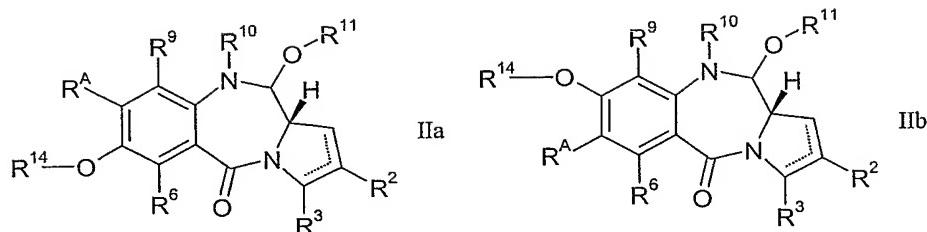
24. Use of a compound according to any one of claims 8 to 21 in the manufacture of a medicament for treating a proliferative disease.

20  
25. A method of treatment of a proliferative disease, comprising administering to a subject in need of treatment a therapeutically-effective amount of a compound of any one of claims 8 to 21.

25      26. A method of synthesising a compound of formula **Ia** or **Ib**:



from a compound of formula IIa or IIb respectively:



wherein:

the dotted lines indicate the optional presence of a double bond between C1 and C2 or C2 and C3;

5       $\text{R}^2$  and  $\text{R}^3$  are independently selected from  $-\text{H}$ ,  $=\text{O}$ ,  $=\text{CH}_2$ ,  $-\text{CN}$ ,  $-\text{R}$ ,  $\text{OR}$ , halo,  $=\text{CH}-\text{R}$ ,  $\text{O}-\text{SO}_2-\text{R}$ ,  $\text{CO}_2\text{R}$  and  $\text{COR}$ ;

$\text{R}^6$  and  $\text{R}^9$  are independently selected from  $\text{H}$ ,  $\text{R}$ ,  $\text{OH}$ ,  $\text{OR}$ ,  $\text{SH}$ ,  $\text{SR}$ ,  $\text{NH}_2$ ,  $\text{NHR}$ ,  $\text{NRR}'$ , nitro,  $\text{Me}_3\text{Sn}$  and halo;

where  $\text{R}$  and  $\text{R}'$  are independently selected from optionally substituted  $\text{C}_{1-12}$  alkyl,  $\text{C}_{3-20}$  heterocyclyl and  $\text{C}_{5-20}$  aryl groups;

10      $\text{R}^{\text{A}}$  is selected from  $\text{H}$ ,  $\text{R}$ ,  $\text{OR}$ ,  $\text{SH}$ ,  $\text{SR}$ ,  $\text{NH}_2$ ,  $\text{NHR}$ ,  $\text{NRR}'$ , nitro,  $\text{Me}_3\text{Sn}$  and halo;

$\text{R}^{10}$  is a carbamate-based nitrogen protecting group;

$\text{R}^{11}$  is an oxygen protecting group; and

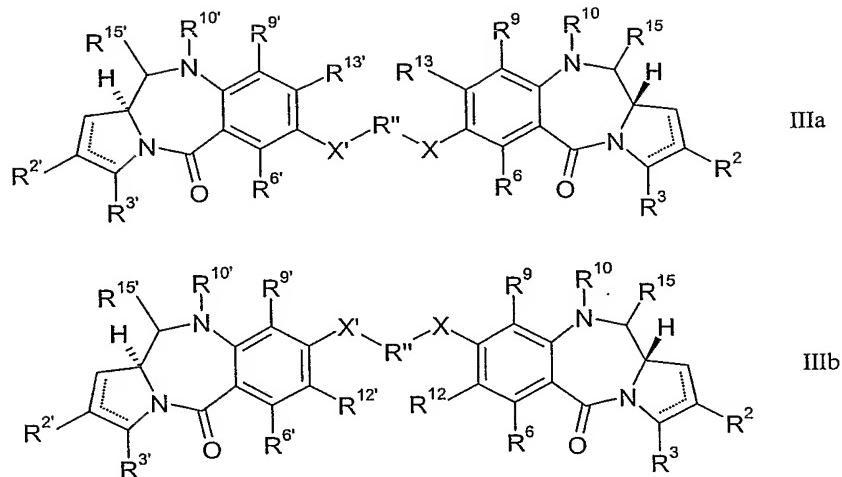
15      $\text{R}^{14}$  is an oxygen protecting group orthogonal to  $\text{R}^{11}$ .

27. A method according to claim 26, wherein  $\text{R}^{14}$  is benzyl ether

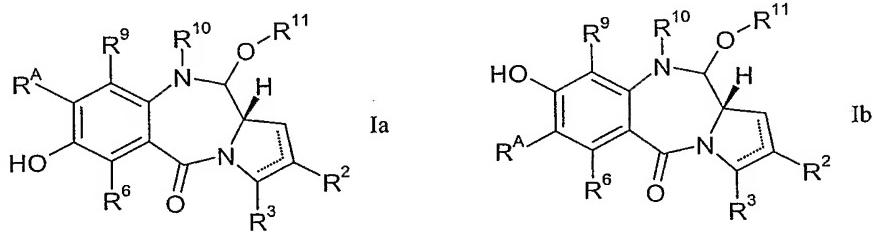
and  $\text{R}^{\text{A}}$  is  $\text{OMe}$  or  $\text{H}$ .

20     28. A method according to either claim 26 or claim 27, wherein  $\text{R}^{11}$  is THP or a silyl oxygen protecting group.

29. A method of synthesising a compound of formula **IIIa** or **IIIb**:



or a solvate thereof, from a compound of formula **Ia** or **Ib** respectively:



5 wherein:

the dotted lines indicate the optional presence of a double bond between C1 and C2 or C2 and C3;

$\text{R}^2$  and  $\text{R}^3$  are independently selected from  $-\text{H}$ ,  $=\text{O}$ ,  $=\text{CH}_2$ ,  $-\text{CN}$ ,  $-\text{R}$ ,  $\text{OR}$ , halo,  $=\text{CH}-\text{R}$ ,  $\text{O-SO}_2-\text{R}$ ,  $\text{CO}_2\text{R}$  and  $\text{COR}$ ;

10  $\text{R}^6$ ,  $\text{R}^9$ ,  $\text{R}^{12}$  and  $\text{R}^{13}$  are independently selected from  $\text{H}$ ,  $\text{R}$ ,  $\text{OH}$ ,  $\text{OR}$ ,  $\text{SH}$ ,  $\text{SR}$ ,  $\text{NH}_2$ ,  $\text{NHR}$ ,  $\text{NRR}'$ , nitro,  $\text{Me}_3\text{Sn}$  and halo; where  $\text{R}$  and  $\text{R}'$  are independently selected from optionally substituted  $\text{C}_{1-12}$  alkyl,  $\text{C}_{3-20}$  heterocyclyl and  $\text{C}_{5-20}$  aryl groups;

15  $\text{R}^A$  is selected from  $\text{H}$ ,  $\text{R}$ ,  $\text{OR}$ ,  $\text{SH}$ ,  $\text{SR}$ ,  $\text{NH}_2$ ,  $\text{NHR}$ ,  $\text{NRR}'$ , nitro,  $\text{Me}_3\text{Sn}$  and halo;

$\text{R}^{10}$  is a carbamate-based nitrogen protecting group and  $\text{R}^{15}$  is either  $\text{O-R}^{11}$ , wherein  $\text{R}^{11}$  is an oxygen protecting group, or  $\text{OH}$ , or  $\text{R}^{10}$  and  $\text{R}^{15}$  together form a double bond between N10 and C11; and where  $\text{R}''$  is a  $\text{C}_{3-12}$  alkylene group, and each  $\text{X}$  is independently selected from  $\text{O}$ ,  $\text{S}$ , or  $\text{NH}$ ; and

20

$R^{2''}$ ,  $R^{3''}$ ,  $R^{6''}$ ,  $R^{9''}$ ,  $R^{10''}$ ,  $R^{12''}$ ,  $R^{13''}$  and  $R^{15''}$  are all independently selected from the same lists as previously defined for  $R^2$ ,  $R^3$ ,  $R^6$ ,  $R^9$ ,  $R^{10}$ ,  $R^{12}$ ,  $R^{13}$  and  $R^{15}$  respectively.

5 30. A method according to claim 29, comprising the step of either:

(a) reacting a compound of formula **Ia** or **Ib** with a compound having the formula  $Y-R''-Y'$  to yield a compound of formula **IIIa** or **IIIb**; or

10 (b) (i) reacting a compound of formula **Ia** or **Ib** with a compound having the formula  $Y-R''-YProt$ , and  
(ii) converting  $YProt$  in the reaction product from (i) to  $Y'$ , and  
(iii) reacting the product from (ii) with a compound of formula **Ia** or **Ib** to yield a compound of formula **IIIa** or **IIIb**;

15 wherein:

$Y$ ,  $Y'$  are independently selected from OH, I, Br, Cl, mesylate or tosylate;

20  $YProt$  is a precursor to  $Y'$  or a chemically protected form of  $Y'$  having a protecting group that is orthogonal to  $R^{10}$  and  $R^{11}$ .

31. A method according to claim 30, wherein  $Y$  and  $Y'$  are I.

25 32. A method according to claim 30, wherein  $Y$  is OH and  $YProt$  is O-benzyl.

(19) World Intellectual Property Organization  
International Bureau



(43) International Publication Date  
15 September 2005 (15.09.2005)

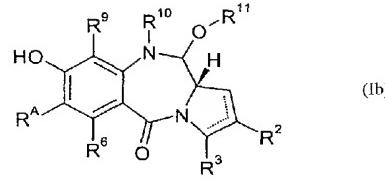
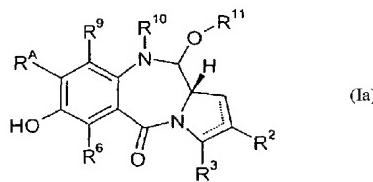
PCT

(10) International Publication Number  
**WO 2005/085259 A3**

- (51) International Patent Classification<sup>7</sup>: **C07D 519/00**, 487/04, A61K 31/55, A61P 35/00
- (21) International Application Number: PCT/GB2005/000770
- (22) International Filing Date: 1 March 2005 (01.03.2005)
- (25) Filing Language: English
- (26) Publication Language: English
- (30) Priority Data: 0404577.9 1 March 2004 (01.03.2004) GB
- (71) Applicant (for all designated States except US): **SPIROGEN LIMITED [GB/GB]**; 79 George Street, Ryde Isle of Wight PO33 2JF (GB).
- (72) Inventors; and
- (75) Inventors/Applicants (for US only): **HOWARD, Philip Wilson [GB/GB]**; 3 Westbourne Mews, The Maltings, St Albans Hertfordshire AL1 1LS (GB). **KANG, Gyoung-Dong [KR/GB]**; 59 Bridgewood Road, Worcester Park Surrey KT4 8XR (GB).
- (74) Agents: **WATSON, Robert et al.**; Mewburn Ellis LLP, York House, 23 Kingsway, London Greater London WC2B 6HP (GB).
- (81) Designated States (unless otherwise indicated, for every kind of national protection available): AE, AG, AL, AM, AT, AU, AZ, BA, BB, BG, BR, BW, BY, BZ, CA, CH, CN, CO, CR, CU, CZ, DE, DK, DM, DZ, EC, EE, EG, ES, FI, GB, GD, GE, GH, GM, HR, HU, ID, IL, IN, IS, JP, KE, KG, KP, KR, KZ, LC, LK, LR, LS, LT, LU, LV, MA, MD, MG, MK, MN, MW, MX, MZ, NA, NI, NO, NZ, OM, PG, PH, PL, PT, RO, RU, SC, SD, SE, SG, SK, SL, SM, SY, TJ, TM, TN, TR, TT, TZ, UA, UG, US, UZ, VC, VN, YU, ZA, ZM, ZW.
- (84) Designated States (unless otherwise indicated, for every kind of regional protection available): ARIPO (BW, GH, GM, KE, LS, MW, MZ, NA, SD, SL, SZ, TZ, UG, ZM, ZW), Eurasian (AM, AZ, BY, KG, KZ, MD, RU, TJ, TM), European (AT, BE, BG, CH, CY, CZ, DE, DK, EE, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, HU, IE, IS, IT, LT, LU, MC, NL, PL, PT, RO, SE, SI, SK, TR), OAPI (BF, BJ, CF, CG, CI, CM, GA, GN, GQ, GW, ML, MR, NE, SN, TD, TG).
- Published:  
— with international search report
- (88) Date of publication of the international search report: 5 January 2006

*For two-letter codes and other abbreviations, refer to the "Guidance Notes on Codes and Abbreviations" appearing at the beginning of each regular issue of the PCT Gazette.*

(54) Title: PYRROLOBENZODIAZEPINES AS KEY INTERMEDIATES IN THE SYNTHESIS OF DIMERIC CYTOTOXIC PYRROLOBENZODIAZEPINES



(57) Abstract: Compounds and a method of synthesis of compounds of formula (Ia) or (Ib); and salts, solvates, and chemically protected forms thereof, wherein the dotted lines indicate the optional presence of a double bond between C1 and C2 or C2 and C3; R<sup>2</sup> and R<sup>3</sup> are independently selected from -H, =O, =CH<sub>2</sub>, -CN, -R, OR, halo, =CH-R, O-SO<sub>2</sub>-R, CO<sub>2</sub>R and COR; R<sup>10</sup> is a carbamate-based nitrogen protecting group; and R<sup>11</sup> is an oxygen protecting group.

WO 2005/085259 A3

## INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International Application No
PCT/GB2005/000770

A. CLASSIFICATION OF SUBJECT MATTER				
IPC 7	C07D519/00	C07D487/04	A61K31/55	A61P35/00

According to International Patent Classification (IPC) or to both national classification and IPC

## B. FIELDS SEARCHED

Minimum documentation searched (classification system followed by classification symbols)

IPC 7	C07D	A61K
-------	------	------

Documentation searched other than minimum documentation to the extent that such documents are included in the fields searched

Electronic data base consulted during the international search (name of data base and, where practical, search terms used)

EPO-Internal, WPI Data, CHEM ABS Data

## C. DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT

Category °	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
X	WO 00/12508 A (THE UNIVERSITY OF PORTSMOUTH HIGHER EDUCATION CORPORATION; THURSTON, D) 9 March 2000 (2000-03-09) cited in the application cpds. 79,80,89,90,217,218 the whole document	8-25
A	----- WO 00/12507 A (THE UNIVERSITY OF PORTSMOUTH HIGHER EDUCATION CORPORATION; THURSTON, D) 9 March 2000 (2000-03-09) Cpd. 34 the whole document	1-7, 26-32
X	-----	8-25
A	----- -/-	1-7, 26-32

Further documents are listed in the continuation of box C.

Patent family members are listed in annex.

## ° Special categories of cited documents :

- "A" document defining the general state of the art which is not considered to be of particular relevance
- "E" earlier document but published on or after the international filing date
- "L" document which may throw doubts on priority claim(s) or which is cited to establish the publication date of another citation or other special reason (as specified)
- "O" document referring to an oral disclosure, use, exhibition or other means
- "P" document published prior to the international filing date but later than the priority date claimed

- "T" later document published after the international filing date or priority date and not in conflict with the application but cited to understand the principle or theory underlying the invention
- "X" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered novel or cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is taken alone
- "Y" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is combined with one or more other such documents, such combination being obvious to a person skilled in the art.
- "&" document member of the same patent family

Date of the actual completion of the international search	Date of mailing of the international search report
---	--

18 August 2005

21 10. 2005

## Name and mailing address of the ISA

European Patent Office, P.B. 5818 Patentlaan 2  
NL - 2280 HV Rijswijk  
Tel. (+31-70) 340-2040, Tx. 31 651 epo nl.  
Fax: (+31-70) 340-3016

## Authorized officer

Fritz, M

## INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International	Application No
PCT/GB2005/000770	

## C.(Continuation) DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT

Category °	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
X	<p>GREGSON S J ET AL: "Linker Length Modulates DNA Cross-Linking Reactivity and Cytotoxic Potency of C8/C8' Ether-Linked C2-exo-Unsaturated Pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepine (PBD) Dimers"</p> <p>JOURNAL OF MEDICINAL CHEMISTRY, AMERICAN CHEMICAL SOCIETY. WASHINGTON, US, vol. 47, 30 January 2004 (2004-01-30), pages 1161-1174, XP002316295</p> <p>ISSN: 0022-2623</p> <p>Cpds. 3a-3d, 4a-4b, 21a,21b</p> <p>-----</p>	8-25
X	<p>KAMAL A ET AL: "Synthesis and DNA-binding affinity of A-C8/C-C2 alkoxyamido-linked pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepine dimers"</p> <p>BIOORGANIC &amp; MEDICINAL CHEMISTRY LETTERS, OXFORD, GB, vol. 13, no. 22, 14 October 2003 (2003-10-14), pages 3955-3958, XP002329064</p> <p>ISSN: 0960-894X</p> <p>Cpd. DSB-120</p> <p>-----</p>	8-25
A	<p>US 2003/187253 A1 (WANG JEH-JENG)</p> <p>2 October 2003 (2003-10-02)</p> <p>the whole document</p> <p>-----</p>	1-32

## INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International application No.  
PCT/GB2005/000770

### Box II Observations where certain claims were found unsearchable (Continuation of item 2 of first sheet)

This International Search Report has not been established in respect of certain claims under Article 17(2)(a) for the following reasons:

1.  Claims Nos.: because they relate to subject matter not required to be searched by this Authority, namely:
  
2.  Claims Nos.: because they relate to parts of the International Application that do not comply with the prescribed requirements to such an extent that no meaningful International Search can be carried out, specifically:
  
3.  Claims Nos.: because they are dependent claims and are not drafted in accordance with the second and third sentences of Rule 6.4(a).

### Box III Observations where unity of invention is lacking (Continuation of item 3 of first sheet)

This International Searching Authority found multiple inventions in this international application, as follows:

see additional sheet

1.  As all required additional search fees were timely paid by the applicant, this International Search Report covers all searchable claims.
  
2.  As all searchable claims could be searched without effort justifying an additional fee, this Authority did not invite payment of any additional fee.
  
3.  As only some of the required additional search fees were timely paid by the applicant, this International Search Report covers only those claims for which fees were paid, specifically claims Nos.:
  
4.  No required additional search fees were timely paid by the applicant. Consequently, this International Search Report is restricted to the invention first mentioned in the claims; it is covered by claims Nos.:

#### Remark on Protest

- The additional search fees were accompanied by the applicant's protest.
- No protest accompanied the payment of additional search fees.

FURTHER INFORMATION CONTINUED FROM PCT/ISA/ 210

This International Searching Authority found multiple (groups of) inventions in this international application, as follows:

1. claims: 1-7,8(part);10;11-32(part)

Compounds of formula IIIa; intermediates (Ia), compositions, methods, uses thereof; process for their preparation  
---

2. claims: 1-7,8(part);9;11-32(part)

Compounds of formula IIIb, intermediates (Ib), compositions, methods, uses thereof; process for their preparation  
---

## INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

## Information on patent family members

International	Publication No
PCT/GB2005/000770	

Patent document cited in search report		Publication date	Patent family member(s)		Publication date
WO 0012508	A	09-03-2000	AT	240334 T	15-05-2003
			AT	294803 T	15-05-2005
			AU	757510 B2	20-02-2003
			AU	5635199 A	21-03-2000
			CA	2341471 A1	09-03-2000
			DE	69907977 D1	18-06-2003
			DE	69907977 T2	22-07-2004
			DE	69925133 D1	09-06-2005
			DK	1193270 T3	15-09-2003
			EP	1193270 A2	03-04-2002
			EP	1413582 A1	28-04-2004
			EP	1109812 A2	27-06-2001
			ES	2199200 T3	16-02-2004
			WO	0012508 A2	09-03-2000
			JP	2002525285 T	13-08-2002
			NZ	510493 A	28-11-2003
			PT	1193270 T	31-10-2003
			US	2003120069 A1	26-06-2003
-----					
WO 0012507	A	09-03-2000	AT	246687 T	15-08-2003
			AU	758398 B2	20-03-2003
			AU	5526199 A	21-03-2000
			CA	2341968 A1	09-03-2000
			DE	69910227 D1	11-09-2003
			DE	69910227 T2	17-06-2004
			DK	1109811 T3	24-11-2003
			EP	1109811 A2	27-06-2001
			ES	2205872 T3	01-05-2004
			WO	0012507 A2	09-03-2000
			JP	2002525284 T	13-08-2002
			NZ	510492 A	29-08-2003
			PT	1109811 T	31-12-2003
			US	2003195196 A1	16-10-2003
			US	6562806 B1	13-05-2003
-----					
US 2003187253	A1	02-10-2003	NONE		
-----					